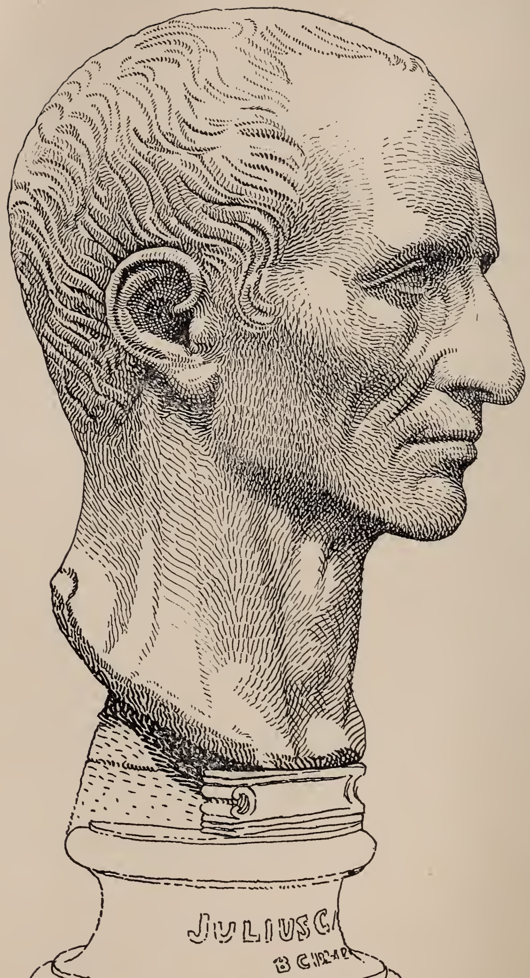
Russell Ellsworth
2124 - Eye St NW
Washington D.C.



GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(British Museum.)

Bennett's Latin Series

FIRST YEAR LATIN

PREPARATORY TO CAESAR

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Boston

ALLYN AND BACON

1909

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE.

Most teachers will measure the value of a beginning book by the thoroughness with which it prepares for the work to be done in the second year. The work of second-year Latin in this country centres, as a rule, around the study of Caesar's Commentaries and the Latin Grammar. The present volume is intended to meet both these ends in the most successful way.

In order to prepare the pupil for the intelligent and effective study of Caesar, the vocabulary has been chosen from a limited number (about 750) of the commonest words employed by Caesar in the Gallic War. The syntax, too, has been restricted, except in the rarest instances, to that employed by Caesar. At the earliest possible point consistent with honest work, simple passages of continuous prose have been introduced, giving in outline the chief features of Caesar's campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. At the close of the Lessons, Book II of the Gallic War is given with annotation.

To prepare for the systematic study of the Latin Grammar, — the second main line of endeavor in the Latin work of the second year, — the grouping of the material throughout the book has been made to follow as nearly as possible the arrangement of all our Latin grammars. By this means the grammar work of the second year is made to involve no re-adjustment, but

becomes simply the consistent working out of the plan inaugurated with the beginning book.

As regards the English-Latin Exercises which accompany the Lessons on the declensions and conjugations, the author believes that too much should not be expected from merely written work on forms. In teaching inflections nothing can take the place of incessant oral drill. It cannot be too strongly emphasized that without thorough knowledge of the forms the study of Latin or any other inflected language will always drag, and will be distasteful and profitless to the student, as well as discouraging to the teacher.

It is probably no exaggeration to assert that the chief defect in the teaching of Latin to-day is the failure to master the declensions and conjugations at the very outset of the study. Honest and thorough work here is the key to the solution of the difficulties that come later. An adequate knowledge of the forms does not come of itself; it does not come even by reading. It can come only by persistent, sustained attention to the forms themselves at the earliest stages of the study. Not until the student is equipped with this fundamental knowledge is he prepared to go on and pursue with profit and reasonable facility the study of syntax and the intelligent reading of a Latin author.

C. E. B.

ITHACA, March 1, 1909.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

SOUNDS, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

PART II.

INFLECTIONS.

PART III.

SYNTAX.

ILLUSTRATIONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= *ablative.*
acc.	= *accusative.*
adj.	= *adjective.*
adv.	= *adverb, adverbial.*
c.	= *common (gender).*
comp.	= *comparative.*
conj.	= *conjunction.*
dat.	= *dative.*
decl.	= *declension.*
dep.	= *deponent.*
e.g.	= *exempli gratia* = *for example.*
etc.	= *et cetera* = *and so forth.*
f.	= *feminine.*
gen.	= *genitive.*
i.e.	= *id est* = *that is.*
impers.	= *impersonal, impersonally.*
indecl.	= *indeclinable.*
indic.	= *indicative.*
inf.	= *infinitive.*
interrog.	= *interrogative.*
intr.	= *intransitive.*
lit.	= *literally.*
masc.	= *masculine.*
n., neut.	= *neuter.*
nom.	= *nominative.*
p., pp.	= *page, pages.*
pass.	= *passive.*
pl., plu.	= *plural.*
prep.	= *preposition.*
pres.	= *present.*
pron.	= *pronoun.*
rel.	= *relative.*
sc.	= *supply.*
sing.	= *singular.*
sup., super.	= *superlative.*
tr., trans.	= *transitive.*
w.	= *with.*
1, *with verbs*	= *1st conjugation.*

PART I.

SOUNDS, QUANTITY, ACCENT.

LESSON I.

1. ALPHABET.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that the Latin has no *w*.

2. SOUNDS CLASSIFIED.

The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u.** The other letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are **ae, oe, au, eu, ui.**

3. PRONUNCIATION.[1]

a) **Vowels.**

ā[2] as in *father;* **ă** as in the first syllable of *ahá;*
ē as in *they;* **ĕ** as in *met;*
ī as in *machine;* **ĭ** as in *pin;*
ō as in *note;* **ŏ** as in *obey, melody;*
ū as in *rude;* **ŭ** as in *put.*

b) **Diphthongs.**

ae like *ai* in *aisle;*
oe like *oi* in *oil;*
au like *ow* in *how;*
eu with its two elements, **e** and **u**, pronounced in rapid succession;
ui occurs mainly in *cui* and *huic.* These may be pronounced as though spelled *kwee* and *wheek.*

---

[1] The system of pronunciation here given is that employed by the ancient Romans themselves. It is often called the 'Roman method.'

[2] Vowels which are long in quantity have a horizontal line above them, as **ā**, **ī**, **ō**, *etc.* Short vowels either have the curved mark (**ă**, **ĕ**), or are left unmarked.

c) **Consonants.**

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu, r, x, z, are pronounced as in English except that *bs, bt* are pronounced *ps, pt.*

c is always pronounced as *k.*

t is always pronounced as plain *t*, never with the sound of *sh*, as in Eng. *oration.*

g always as in *get;* when *ngu* precedes a vowel, **gu** has the sound of *gw*, as in **anguis, languidus.**

j [1] has the sound of *y* as in *yet.*

s always as in *sin, gas;* in **suādeō, suāvis, suēscō,** and in compounds and derivatives of these words, **su** has the sound of *sw.*

v like *w.*

ph, ch, th, are to be pronounced practically like our simple *p, k, t.*

Doubled letters like **ll, mm, tt,** *etc.*, should be pronounced with an endeavor to articulate both members of the combination distinctly.

4. QUANTITY.

A. Quantity of Vowels.

A vowel is long or short according to *the length of time* consumed in its pronunciation. As will be seen by comparing the sounds given in § 3, the long sounds take considerably more time to pronounce than the short ones. For example, the ī of *machine* takes more time than the ĭ of *pin.* No absolute rule can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. The pupil can become familiar with them only by observing the quantity as marked in the paradigms, the vocabularies, and the exercises. Yet the following principles are of aid: —

1. *A vowel is long,* —
   a) before **nf, ns,** as **īnfāns, cōnsēnsus.**
   b) when the result of contraction; as **nīlum** for **nihilum.**

---

[1] Some books print **i** instead of **j.**

2. *A vowel is short,* —

a) before **nt, nd**; as **amant, amandus.** A few exceptions occur in cases of compounds whose first member has a long vowel; as **nōndum** (for **nōn dum**).

b) before another vowel or **h** [1]; as **meus, trahō.**

N.B. — Long vowels should always be *pronounced* long (that is the only thing that '*long*' means); short vowels should be pronounced short.

B. Quantity of Syllables.

A syllable is long or short according to *the length of time* it takes to pronounce such syllable.

1. *A syllable is long* (that is, it takes a long time to pronounce it), —

a) if it contains a long vowel; as **māter, rēgnum.**[2]

b) if it contains a diphthong; as **causae, foedus.**[2]

c) if it contains a short vowel followed by **x, z,** or any two consonants (except a mute followed by **l** or **r**)[3]; as **axis, restat, gaza, amantis.**[4]

2. *A syllable is regularly short* if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel, by a single consonant, or by a mute with **l** or **r**; as **mea, amat, patris, volucris.**[5]

5. ACCENT.

1. There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

2. Words of two syllables are accented upon the first; as **tégit, mṓrem.**

3. Words of more than two syllables are accented upon the penult (next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise upon the antepenult (second from the last); as **amā́vī, miníster, míserum.**

---

[1] **h** was pronounced so lightly as to be entirely disregarded, whether singly or in combination.

[2] Such syllables are sometimes said to be long by nature.

[3] The mutes are **p, c, t; b, d, g.**

[4] Such syllables are sometimes said to be long by position.

[5] Such syllables are sometimes said to be short by position.

6. EXERCISE.

Pronounce the following words, observing carefully the proper sound of each letter, and placing the accent upon the proper syllable. Remember to pronounce all long vowels long, all short vowels short.[1]

1. Majōrum, amīcus, Eratosthenēs. 2. Queō, nāscor, poscō. 3. Juvenis, porrēctūra, abiimus. 4. Amīcitia, obtineō, antīquus. 5. Neuter, Chēruscī, exemplum. 6. Aggerō, exiguitās, sanguis. 7. Ubiī, mittō, nātiōnēs. 8. Foedus, dignitās, cōnsēnsus. 9. Pervenit, efferre, īnstituerat. 10. Arguō, cui, phalanx. 11. Percussus, rēxī, pereō. 12. Jam, suāvitās, cōnsuēscō. 13. Concēdō, cōnfīrmārī, referō. 14. Īnserō, pergredī, persuādet.

---

[1] In the division of syllables, the first consonant in a group of two or more is regularly joined with the *preceding* vowel; as, **as-cen-dō**, **spec-tā-tus**, **mi-nis-trō-rum**. But a single consonant or a mute with **l** or **r** (**pl**, **bl**; **pr**, **tr**, *etc.*) is regularly joined to the *following* vowel; as, **vo-lu-cris**, **mī-se-rat**.



ROMAN WAR TOWER.

PART II.

INFLECTIONS.

LESSON II.

7. THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech in Latin are the same as in English; *viz.*, Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections; but the Latin has no article.

8. INFLECTION.

Of these eight parts of speech, the first four are capable of **Inflection**, that is, of undergoing change of form to express modifications of meaning. In the case of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, this process is called **Declension**; in the case of Verbs, **Conjugation**.

9. NOUNS.

1. A Noun is the name of a *person*, *place*, *thing*, or *quality;* as **Caesar**, *Caesar;* **Rōma**, *Rome;* **penna**, *feather;* **virtūs**, *courage*.

2. Nouns have Gender, Number, and Case.

10. GENDER.

1. There are in Latin, as in English, three Genders: the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

2. Gender in Latin may be either natural (that is, based on sex, as gender always is in English) or grammatical (not based on sex).

3. *Natural Gender.* Nouns denoting *persons* have natural gender, and are Masculine, if they denote males, as **nauta**, *sailor;* Feminine, if they denote females, as **māter**, *mother*.

4. *Grammatical Gender.* When nouns have grammatical gender, the gender is determined: —

A. **By signification.** Thus: —

- *a*) Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months* are Masculine; as, **Sēquana**, *Seine;* **Eurus**, *East Wind;* **Aprīlis**, *April.*
- *b*) Names of *Trees*, *Towns*, and *Islands* are Feminine; as, **quercus**, *oak;* **Corinthus**, *Corinth;* **Rhodus**, *Rhodes.*
- *c*) Indeclinable nouns are Neuter; as, **nefās**, *wrong.*

B. **By ending.**

The principles for gender by ending are given later, under the five declensions.

11. NUMBER.

Latin has two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural. The Singular denotes one object; the Plural more than one.

LESSON III.

12. CASES.

1. There are six Cases in Latin: —

Nominative,	Case of Subject;
Genitive,	Objective with *of*, or Possessive;
Dative,	Objective with *to* or *for;*
Accusative,	Case of Direct Object;
Vocative,	Case of Address;
Ablative,	Objective with *by*, *from*, *in*, *with.*

2. LOCATIVE. Vestiges of another case, the **Locative** (denoting place where), occur in names of towns and in a few other words.

3. OBLIQUE CASES. The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called **Oblique Cases.**

4. FORMATION OF THE CASES. The different cases were originally formed by joining certain **case-endings** to a fundamental part called the **stem**. Thus **portam** (Accusative Singular) was formed by joining the case-ending **m** to the stem **porta-**. But in most cases the final vowel of the stem has united so closely with the original case-ending, that the latter has become more or less obscured. The apparent case-ending thus resulting is called a **termination.**

13. THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

There are five Declensions in Latin, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the Stem, and also by the Termination of the Genitive Singular, as follows: —

DECLENSION.	FINAL LETTER OF STEM.	GEN. TERMINATION.
First	ā	-ae
Second	ŏ	-ī
Third	ĭ / Some consonant	-ĭs
Fourth	ŭ	-ūs
Fifth	ē	-ĕī

Cases alike in Form.

1. The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of nouns and adjectives in **-us** of the Second Declension.

2. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always alike.

3. In Neuters the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are always alike, and in the Plural end in **-ă**.

4. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, the Accusative Plural is regularly like the Nominative.

LESSON IV.

FIRST DECLENSION.

14. Nouns of the First Declension end in **-ă**. They are Feminine, and are declined as follows: —

Porta, *gate.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Cases.		Meanings.	Terminations.		Meanings.	Terminations.
Nom.	porta	*a gate* (subject)	-ă	portae	*gates* (subject)	-ae
Gen.	portae	*of a gate*	-ae	portārum	*of gates*	-ārum
Dat.	portae	*to* or *for a gate*	-ae	portīs	*to* or *for gates*	-īs
Acc.	portam	*a gate* (object)	-am	portās	*gates* (object)	-ās
Voc.	porta	*O gate!*	-ă	portae	*O gates!*	-ae
Abl.	portā	*with, by, from, in, a gate*	-ā	portīs	*with, by, from, in, gates*	-īs

1. The Latin has no article, and **porta** may mean either *a gate* or *the gate;* and in the Plural, *gates* or *the gates.*

15. Peculiarities of Nouns of the First Declension.

1. Exceptions in Gender. Nouns denoting males are Masculine; as, **nauta**, *sailor;* **agricola**, *farmer.*

2. Special Case-Endings, —

a) The Locative Singular ends in **-ae**; as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome.*

b) **Dea**, *goddess*, and **fīlia**, *daughter*, commonly form the Dative and Ablative Plural with the termination **-ābus**; as, **deābus**, **fīliābus**. This is in order to distinguish these words from the corresponding cases of **deus**, *god*, and **fīlius**, *son.*

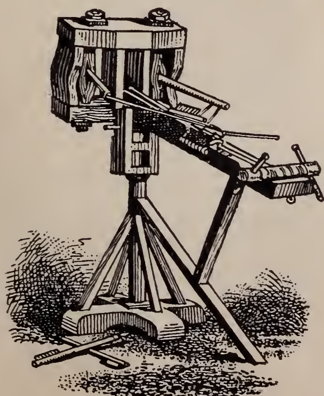
16. VOCABULARY.

agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*
cōpia, ae, f., *plenty;* in plural, **cōpiae, ārum,** *troops.*
fīlia, ae, f., *daughter.*
Galba, ae, m., *Galba* (a man's name).
incola, ae, m., *inhabitant.*
īnsula, ae, f., *island.*
Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*
nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*

EXERCISES.

17. 1. Agricolae, agricolam, agricolārum. 2. Īnsulae, īnsulīs. 3. Italiae, Galbae. 4. Fīlia, fīliārum, fīliābus. 5. Incolae, incolīs. 6. Cōpiārum, cōpiīs, cōpiās. 7. Italiam, īnsulārum, fīliās. 8. Agricolīs, fīliam, fīliae. 9. Incolārum, cōpiam. 10. Agricolās, nautārum, nautās. 11. Incolam, nautārum, nautīs.

18. 1. To the farmers; of the sailor; of the inhabitants. 2. To the island; of the troops; by the troops. 3. Of a farmer; farmers (as subject); sailors (as direct object). 4. To the daughters; of the daughters. 5. To the daughter of Galba. 6. The inhabitants of the island. 7. Of the islands; to Galba; to Italy.



Roman Catapult.

LESSON V.

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued).

19. Paradigm of the Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. **amō**, *I love.*	**amāmus**, *we love.*
amās, *thou lovest, you love.*	**amātis**, *you love.*
amat, *he, she, it loves.*	**amant**, *they love.*

2. All verbs of the First Conjugation are inflected like **amō**. Such verbs are given in the General Vocabulary with the numeral 1.

3. In Latin the Subject of the verb, if a personal pronoun (*I*, *thou*, *he*, *we*, etc.), is not expressed unless emphatic, but is implied in the verb.

20. Principles of Syntax.

1. The Subject of the Verb stands in the Nominative.
2. The Object of the Verb stands in the Accusative.
3. The Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person.
4. A Noun used to complete the meaning of another Noun is put in the Genitive : as, —

fīlia agricolae, *the daughter of the farmer*, or, *the farmer's daughter.*

21. VOCABULARY.

accūsō, *I accuse.*
et, conj., *and.*
incitō, *I urge on, encourage.*
laudō, *I praise.*
vāstō, *I lay waste.*
vocō, *I call, summon.*

EXERCISES.

22. 1. Fīliās agricolae laudāmus.[1] 2. Galba cōpiās incitat. 3. Cōpiae Galbae Italiam vāstant. 4. Galbam laudāmus.

[1] The verb in Latin ordinarily stands at the end of the sentence.

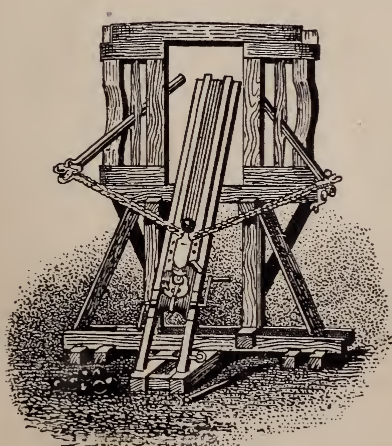
5. Cōpiās Galbae laudō. 6. Incolās īnsulārum accūsātis. 7. Galba agricolam vocat. 8. Īnsulās vāstāmus. 9. Galbam et agricolās vocāmus. 10. Fīliās agricolae vocō. 11. Agricolās incitāmus. 12. Fīliam Galbae laudant. 13. Agricolās laudās. 14. Fīliās agricolārum vocātis.

23. 1. You[1] summon the farmers. 2. We praise Galba's[2] daughter. 3. Galba's daughters encourage the farmers. 4. He praises the troops 5. The inhabitants of the island accuse Galba. 6. Galba praises the farmers.

---

[1] Unless it is clear that the Plural is meant, *you* is to be regarded as the sign of the Singular.

[2] *I.e.* the daughter of Galba.



Roman Catapult.

LESSON VI.

SECOND DECLENSION.

24. Pure Latin nouns of the Second Declension end in **-us, -er, -ir,** Masculine ; **-um,** Neuter ; and are declined as follows: —

		Vīcus, *village*.	Termination.	**Bellum**, *war*.	Termination.
SINGULAR.	*Nom.*	vīcus	-us	bellum	-um
	Gen.	vīcī	-ī	bellī	-ī
	Dat.	vīcō	-ō	bellō	-ō
	Acc.	vīcum	-um	bellum	-um
	Voc.	vīce	-e	bellum	-um
	Abl.	vīcō	-ō	bellō	-ō
PLURAL.	*Nom.*	vīcī	-ī	bella	-a
	Gen.	vīcōrum	-ōrum	bellōrum	-ōrum
	Dat.	vīcīs	-īs	bellīs	-īs
	Acc.	vīcōs	-ōs	bella	-a
	Voc.	vīcī	-ī	bella	-a
	Abl.	vīcīs	-īs	bellīs	-īs

		Puer, *boy*.	**Ager**, *field*.	**Vir**, *man*.	Termination.
SINGULAR.	*Nom.*	puer	ager	vir	Wanting
	Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
	Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
	Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
	Voc.	puer	ager	vir	Wanting
	Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
PLURAL.	*Nom.*	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
	Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
	Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
	Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
	Voc.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
	Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

25. VOCABULARY.

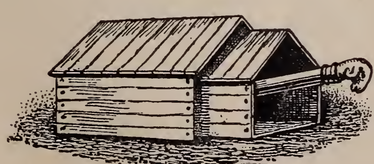
amīcus, ī, m., *friend.*
auxilium, ī (iī), n., *aid, help.*
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *Belgians,* a Gallic tribe.
Gallī, ōrum, m. pl., *Gauls.*
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans.*
implōrō, *I entreat.*
proelium, ī (iī), n., *battle.*
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *Séquani,* a Gallic tribe.
vexō, *I harass, annoy; ravage.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

EXERCISES.

26. 1. Vīcō, vīcum, vīcīs. 2. Amīcī, amīcōrum, amīcīs. 3. Auxilium, auxiliō. 4. Agrī, agrōs, agrīs. 5. Puerōrum, puerī, puerum. 6. Virīs, virōs, vir. 7. Proelia, amīce.

27. 1. Belgae et Sēquanī auxilium implōrant. 2. Amīcōs Gallōrum laudāmus. 3. Cōpiae Galbae Sēquanōs proeliō vexant. 4. Puerī virōs implōrant. 5. Belgae vīcōs et agrōs Germānōrum vexant. 6. Auxilium Gallōrum implōrant. 7. Puerī fīliās agricolārum vexant.

28. 1. Battles; by battle; of battles. 2. To a friend; of friends. 3. The villages; to the village. 4. The troops lay waste the villages of the Gauls. 5. I entreat the help of the Germans. 6. He harasses the Gauls in battle.



BATTERING-RAM.

LESSON VII.

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued).

29. Peculiarities of Inflection in the Second Declension.

1. Most nouns in **-er** in common use are declined like **ager**, not like **puer**.

2. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** throughout the best period of the language formed the Genitive Singular in **-ī** (instead of **-iī**); as, —

Nom.	**ingenium**	**fīlius**
Gen.	**ingénī**	**fīlī**

These Genitives accent the penult, even when it is short.

3. The Locative Singular ends in **-ī**; as, **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*.

30. Inflection of the Present Indicative of the Verb *sum*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sum,	*I am.*	**sumus**,	*we are.*
ĕs,[1]	*thou art, you are.*	**ĕstis**,[1]	*you are.*
ĕst,[1]	*he, she, it is.*	**sunt**,	*they are.*

31. Principles of Syntax.

1. A Predicate Noun is one which limits its subject through the medium of the verb *to be*, or some similar word, as *seem*, *become*. A Predicate Noun agrees with its subject in case; as, —

Galba est agricola, *Galba is a farmer.*

2. An Appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains; as, —

Galba agricola, *Galba, the farmer.*

---

[1] Pronounce these words, severally, **ĕs**, **ĕst**, **ĕstis**, not **ēs**, **ēst**, **ēstis**.

32. VOCABULARY.

castra, ōrum, n. pl., *a camp*.
dōnum, ī, n., *gift*.
oppidum, ī, n., *town, walled town*.
oppugnō, *I attack, assault*.
perīculum, ī, n., *danger*.
vītō, *I avoid*.

EXERCISES.

33. 1. Oppidī, oppidōrum. 2. Estis, es. 3. Proelī, proeliīs, proeliō. 4. Agrōs Gallōrum, agrīs Belgārum. 5. Sunt, sumus, est. 6. Castrōrum, castrīs. 7. Castra Sēquanōrum, vīcōs Belgārum. 8. Perīcula, perīculīs, perīculī.

34. 1. Sumus amīcī[1] Gallōrum. 2. Sēquanī agricolās, incolās vīcōrum, vexant. 3. Germānī oppida Belgārum oppugnant. 4. Germānī sunt agricolae. 5. Galba, amīcus Gallōrum, castra Germānōrum oppugnat. 6. Bella et perīcula vītāmus. 7. Estis amīcī agricolārum. 8. Galba perīcula proelī vītat. 9. Amīcus Galbae dōna laudat.

35. 1. Of battle; of battles; in battle. 2. To the village; of the villages. 3. The towns; of the town. 4. We are farmers. 5. We attack the towns of the Sequani. 6. He is a friend of the farmers. 7. You are friends of the Sequani. 8. You avoid the camp of the Gauls.

---

[1] A predicate noun often follows its verb, as here.

LESSON VIII.

ADJECTIVES.

36. Adjectives denote *quality*. They are declined like nouns, and fall into two classes, —

1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.
2. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

In these the Masculine is declined like **vīcus**, **puer**, or **ager**, the Feminine like **porta**, and the Neuter like **bellum**.

37. Thus, Masculine like **vīcus**: —

Bonus, *good*.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	bon**us**	bon**a**	bon**um**
Gen.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dat.	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Acc.	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**
Voc.	bon**e**	bon**a**	bon**um**
Abl.	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**

PLURAL.

Nom.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Gen.	bon**ōrum**	bon**ārum**	bon**ōrum**
Dat.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Acc.	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**a**
Voc.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Abl.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**

38. **Principles of Syntax.**

1. An Adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in Gender, Number, and Case.

2. An Adjective limiting its noun directly is called an *attributive* adjective, as **agricola bonus**, *a good farmer;* an Adjective limiting its noun through the medium of the verb **esse**, *to be*, or some similar verb, is called a *predicate* adjective, as **agricola est bonus**, *the farmer is good;* **agricola vidētur bonus**, *the farmer seems good.*

39. VOCABULARY.

jūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden.*
magnus, a, um, *large, great.*
multus, a, um, *much;* pl., *many.*
numerus, ī, m., *number.*
parvus, a, um, *small.*
populus, ī, m., *people.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman;*—as noun, m., *a Roman.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*

EXERCISES.

40. 1. Populī Rōmānī, populō Rōmānō. 2. Magnae[1] victōriae, mágnārum victōriārum. 3. Multa jūmenta, multīs jūmentīs. 4. Multae īnsulae, multās īnsulās. 5. Incolae bonī, incolārum bonōrum. 6. Parvī vīcī, parvōrum vīcōrum. 7. Magnum proelium, magna proelia, multōrum proeliōrum. 8. Magnum numerum, magnō numerō. 9. Multī incolae, multōs incolās. 10. Parvārum īnsulārum, parvae īnsulae.

41. 1. Of great victories; by a great victory. 2. Many dangers; of many dangers. 3. To the Roman people; of the Roman people. 4. Many islands; many villages; many towns. 5. Of many battles; by small beasts of burden; to a large number of islands. 6. Of a small village; of the large villages; by a great battle. 7. By a small number of good beasts of burden.

---

[1] The attributive adjective (see § 38, 2) in Latin, as in English, more commonly precedes the word which it limits. This is especially true of adjectives of *number, amount*, etc. Yet other adjectives when used attributively often follow the noun; see, for example, § 40, 5; 45, 2.

LESSON IX.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (Continued).

42. Masculine like **puer**: —

Tener, *tender*.

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	tener	tenera	tenerum
Gen.	tenerī	tenerae	tenerī
Dat.	tenerō	tenerae	tenerō
Acc.	tenerum	teneram	tenerum
Voc.	tener	tenera	tenerum
Abl.	tenerō	tenerā	tenerō

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	tenerī	tenerae	tenera
Gen.	tenerōrum	tenerārum	tenerōrum
Dat.	tenerīs	tenerīs	tenerīs
Acc.	tenerōs	tenerās	tenera
Voc.	tenerī	tenerae	tenera
Abl.	tenerīs	tenerīs	tenerīs

43. Masculine like **ager**: —

Sacer, *sacred*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	sacer	sacra	sacrum	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
Gen.	sacrī	sacrae	sacrī	sacrōrum	sacrārum	sacrōrum
Dat.	sacrō	sacrae	sacrō	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs
Acc.	sacrum	sacram	sacrum	sacrōs	sacrās	sacra
Voc.	sacer	sacra	sacrum	sacrī	sacrae	sacra
Abl.	sacrō	sacrā	sacrō	sacrīs	sacrīs	sacrīs

1. Most adjectives in **-er** are declined like **sacer**. Of adjectives in common use only the following are declined like **tener**: **asper**, *rough*; **līber**, *free*; **miser**, *wretched*.

44. VOCABULARY.

Britannia, **ae**, f., *Britain*.
dīmicō, *I contend*.
Helvētiī, **ōrum**, m. pl., *the Helvetii*, a Celtic tribe.
lēgātus, **ī**, m., *lieutenant*.
līber, **era**, **erum**, *free*.
parō, *I prepare*, *get ready*.
pulcher, **chra**, **chrum**, *beautiful*.
superō, *I overcome*.

EXERCISES.

45. 1. Fīliae agricolae sunt pulchrae et bonae. 2. Populus Rōmānus Gallōs superat. 3. Galba, lēgātus Rōmānus, magnum oppidum Sēquanōrum oppugnat. 4. Sēquanī multīs proeliīs dīmicant. 5. Britannia est magna īnsula. 6. Victōria populī Rōmānī est magna. 7. Īnsula est parva. 8. Helvētiī magnum numerum jūmentōrum parant. 9. Magnae cōpiae dīmicant. 10. Multa jūmenta parātis. 11. Cōpiae Rōmānae agrōs Gallōrum vexant. 12. Magnum bellum parāmus. 13. Galba magnum numerum Gallōrum superat. 14. Populus Rōmānus est līber.

46. 1. We get ready many beasts of burden. 2. We praise Galba, the Roman lieutenant. 3. Many Gauls and Germans contend in battle. 4. The beasts of burden are small. 5. The Sequani and Belgians are free. 6. The villages of the Germans are many. 7. We overcome a large number of the Helvetii.

LESSON X.

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

47. The third declension includes several distinct classes of Stems: —

I. Pure Consonant-Stems.

II. ĭ-Stems.

III. Mixed Stems. (Consonant-Stems which have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of ĭ-Stems.)

CONSONANT-STEMS.

48. Consonant-Stems are divided into **Mute** (**p**, **b**; **t**, **d**; **c**, **g**), **Liquid** (**l**, **r**), **Nasal** (**m**, **n**), and **Spirant** (**s**) Stems.

Mute-Stems.

49. Mute-Stems may end, —

1. In a Labial[1] (**p**); as, **prīncep -s**.
2. In a Guttural[1] (**g** or **c**); as, **rēmex** (**rēmeg -s**); **dux** (**duc -s**).
3. In a Dental[1] (**d** or **t**); as, **lapis** (**lapid -s**); **mīles** (**mīlet -s**).

1. Stems in a Labial Mute (**p**).

50. **Prīnceps**, m., *chief.*

	SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDING.	PLURAL.	CASE-ENDING.
Nom.	prīnceps	**-s**	prīncip**ēs**[4]	**-ēs**
Gen.	prīncip**is**[2]	**-is**	prīncip**um**	**-um**
Dat.	prīncip**ī**	**-ī**	prīncip**ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	prīncip**em**	**-em**	prīncip**ēs**[4]	**-ēs**
Voc.	prīnceps	**-s**	prīncip**ēs**[4]	**-ēs**
Abl.	prīncip**e**[3]	**-e**	prīncip**ibus**	**-ibus**

[1] Labials are 'lip' letters; gutturals are 'throat' letters; and dentals are 'teeth' letters.

[2] Pronounce ĭs, not īs. [3] Pronounce ĕ, not ē. [4] Pronounce ēs, not ēz.

2. Stems in a Guttural Mute (g, c).

51. In these the termination **-s** of the Nominative Singular unites with the guttural, thus producing **-x**.

Rēmex, m., *rower*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	rēme**x**	rēmig**ēs**
Gen.	rēmig**is**	rēmig**um**
Dat.	rēmig**ī**	rēmig**ibus**
Acc.	rēmig**em**	rēmig**ēs**
Voc.	rēme**x**	rēmig**ēs**
Abl.	rēmig**e**	rēmig**ibus**

Dux, m., *leader*, *general*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	du**x**	duc**ēs**
Gen.	duc**is**	duc**um**
Dat.	duc**ī**	duc**ibus**
Acc.	duc**em**	duc**ēs**
Voc.	du**x**	duc**ēs**
Abl.	duc**e**	duc**ibus**

3. Stems in a Dental Mute (d, t).

52. In these the final **d** or **t** of the Stem disappears in the Nominative Singular before the ending **-s**.

Lapis, m., *stone*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	lapi**s**	lapid**ēs**
Gen.	lapid**is**	lapid**um**
Dat.	lapid**ī**	lapid**ibus**
Acc.	lapid**em**	lapid**ēs**
Voc.	lapi**s**	lapid**ēs**
Abl.	lapid**e**	lapid**ibus**

Mīles, m., *soldier*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	mīle**s**	mīlit**ēs**
Gen.	mīlit**is**	mīlit**um**
Dat.	mīlit**ī**	mīlit**ibus**
Acc.	mīlit**em**	mīlit**ēs**
Voc.	mīle**s**	mīlit**ēs**
Abl.	mīlit**e**	mīlit**ibus**

53. VOCABULARY.

cōnfīrmō, *I establish*.
cum, *with*, prep. with abl.
eques, itis, m., *horseman*; pl., *cavalry*.
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul*.
imperō, *I demand*.
obses, idis, m., *hostage*.
pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.
virtūs, tūtis, f., *valor*, *virtue*.

54. **Principle of Syntax.**

Cases with Prepositions. — The Accusative and Ablative are used with Prepositions; as, **ad urbem**, *to the city*; **cum cōnsule**, *with the consul*.

EXERCISES.

55. 1. Pāx bona. 2. Multī obsidēs, multīs obsidibus. 3. Magnā virtūte, magnae virtūtis, magnam virtūtem. 4. Mīlitēs Rōmānī, mīlitēs Rōmānōs, mīlitī Rōmānō. 5. Magnae victōriae equitum Rōmānōrum. 6. Magnā virtūte prīncipum.

56. 1. Equitēs cum magnō perīculō proeliō dīmicant. 2. Multī mīlitēs castra Gallōrum oppugnant. 3. Galba magnum numerum obsidum imperat. 4. Prīncipēs Galliae pācem cōnfīrmant. 5. Virtūtem ducum et mīlitum Rōmānōrum laudāmus. 6. Dux rēmigēs laudat. 7. Mīlitēs cum equitibus dīmicant. 8. Ducēs Germānōrum pācem implōrant. 9. Mīlitēs Rōmānī multa oppida magnā virtūte oppugnant.

57. 1. The great valor of the Roman soldiers. 2. To the chiefs, of the rowers, to the soldiers. 3. Of the cavalry, to the cavalry. 4. The general demands many hostages. 5. We establish peace with (**cum**)[1] the chiefs and leaders of the Germans. 6. The Roman soldiers contend with (**cum**)[1] the Helvetii. 7. You praise the leader of the rowers.

---

[1] Unless *with* is equivalent to *by*, it is regularly to be rendered by **cum**.

LESSON XI.

THIRD DECLENSION. — CONSONANT-STEMS (Continued).

Liquid Stems.

58. These usually end in **-r**; a few end in **-l**.

Victor, m., *conqueror.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	victor	victōr**ēs**
Gen.	victōr**is**	victōr**um**
Dat.	victōr**ī**	victōr**ibus**
Acc.	victōr**em**	victōr**ēs**
Voc.	victor	victōr**ēs**
Abl.	victōr**e**	victōr**ibus**

1. Masculine and Feminine Stems ending in a liquid form the Nominative and Vocative Singular without case-ending.

Nasal Stems.

59. These end in **-n**, which often disappears in the Nom. Sing.

Legiō, f., *legion.* — **Nōmen**, n., *name.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	legiō	legiōn**ēs**	nōmen	nōmin**a**
Gen.	legiōn**is**	legiōn**um**	nōmin**is**	nōmin**um**
Dat.	legiōn**ī**	legiōn**ibus**	nōmin**ī**	nōmin**ibus**
Acc.	legiōn**em**	legiōn**ēs**	nōmen	nōmin**a**
Voc.	legiō	legiōn**ēs**	nōmen	nōmin**a**
Abl.	legiōn**e**	legiōn**ibus**	nōmin**e**	nōmin**ibus**

1. The case-ending is lacking in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *all neuters* of the Third Declension.

Spirant or *s*-Stems.

60. **Mōs**, m., *custom.* **Genus**, n., *race.* **Honor**, m., *honor.*

	Mōs	Genus	Honor
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	mōs	genus	honor
Gen.	mō**ris**	gener**is**	honō**ris**
Dat.	mō**rī**	gener**ī**	honō**rī**
Acc.	mō**rem**	genus	honō**rem**
Voc.	mōs	genus	honor
Abl.	mō**re**	gener**e**	honō**re**
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	mō**rēs**	gene**ra**	honō**rēs**
Gen.	mō**rum**	gene**rum**	honō**rum**
Dat.	mō**ribus**	gene**ribus**	honō**ribus**
Acc.	mō**rēs**	gene**ra**	honō**rēs**
Voc.	mō**rēs**	gene**ra**	honō**rēs**
Abl.	mō**ribus**	gene**ribus**	honō**ribus**

1. Note that the final **s** of the stem becomes **r** (between vowels) in the oblique cases. In some words, as **honor**, the **r** of the oblique cases has, by analogy, crept into the Nominative, displacing the earlier **s**.

61. VOCABULARY.

agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart.*
altus, a, um, *high, deep.*
arbor, ŏris, f., *tree.*
Caesar, ăris, m., *Caesar.*
cōnsul, is, m., *consul.*
flūmen, inis, n., *river.*
in, *in, on,* prep. with the abl.
Mārcellus, ī, m., *Marcellus.*
nōmen, inis, n., *name.*
pater, tris, m., *father.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*
silva, ae, f., *forest.*
timor, ōris, m., *fear.*

EXERCISES.

62. 1. Pater cōnsulis, patrī cōnsulis. 2. Aggerēs altī, aggeribus altīs. 3. Cōnsulis bonī, cōnsules bonī, cōnsulum bonōrum. 4. Arborēs silvae; nōmina flūminum. 5. Timōrēs mīlitum. 6. Magna flūmina, multōrum flūminum, in multīs flūminibus.

63. 1. Agger castrōrum est altus. 2. Galba et Mārcellus sunt cōnsulēs. 3. Caesar magnās cōpiās parat. 4. Cōnsul Rōmānus virtūtem mīlitum laudat. 5. Nōmen flūminis est Rhēnus. 6. Arborēs sunt altae. 7. In altō flūmine est parva īnsula. 8. In parvā īnsulā sunt multae pulchrae arborēs.

64. 1. Of a high rampart, with a high rampart. 2. To the fathers of the consuls. 3. High trees; in[1] deep rivers. 4. In the river Rhine; the fear of the soldier. 5. The cavalry of Caesar harass the Gauls. 6. The rivers are deep. 7. We praise Galba, the consul. 8. The Germans attack the rampart of the Roman camp.

---

[1] To denote *in a place*, the preposition *in* is regularly necessary in Latin. The simple Ablative does not suffice.



TRUMPET (bucina).

LESSON XII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — ĭ-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS.

Ĭ-STEMS.

1. Masculine and Feminine ĭ-Stems.

65. Masculine and Feminine ĭ-Stems end in **-is** in the Nominative Singular, and always have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural. They may have either **-īs** or **-ēs** in the Accusative Plural. A few, like **turris**, have **-im** in the Accusative Singular, and **-ī** in the Ablative Singular.

66. **Turris**, f., *tower*. **Hostis**, m., *enemy*.

	SINGULAR.		TERMINATION.	PLURAL.		TERMINATION.
Nom.	turris	hostis	-is	turrēs	hostēs	-ēs
Gen.	turris	hostis	-is	turrium	hostium	-ium
Dat.	turrī	hostī	-ī	turribus	hostibus	-ibus
Acc.	turrim	hostem	-im, -em	turrīs (-ēs)	hostīs (-ēs)	-īs, -ēs
Voc.	turris	hostis	-is	turrēs	hostēs	-ēs
Abl.	turrī	hoste	-ī, -e	turribus	hostibus	-ibus

2. Neuter ĭ-Stems.

67. These end in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar** in the Nominative Singular. They *always* have **-ī** in the Ablative Singular, **-ia** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and **-ium** in the Genitive Plural.

Sedīle, *seat*. **Animal**, *animal*.

	SINGULAR.		TERMINATION.
Nom.	sedīle	animal	Wanting
Gen.	sedīlis	animālis	-is
Dat.	sedīlī	animālī	-ī
Acc.	sedīle	animal	Wanting
Voc.	sedīle	animal	Wanting
Abl.	sedīlī	animālī	-ī

	PLURAL.		TERMINATION.
Nom.	sedīlia	animālia	-ia
Gen.	sedīlium	animālium	-ium
Dat.	sedīlibus	animālibus	-ibus
Acc.	sedīlia	animālia	-ia
Voc.	sedīlia	animālia	-ia
Abl.	sedīlibus	animālibus	-ibus

1. In most words of this class the final **-i** of the stem is lost in the Nominative Singular; in others it appears as **-e**.

MIXED STEMS.

68. Mixed Stems are Consonant-Stems that have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of ĭ-stems. They have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural, and **-ēs** or **-īs** in the Accusative Plural.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Caedēs, f., *slaughter*.	**Arx**, f., *citadel*.	**Caedēs**, f., *slaughter*.	**Arx**, f., *citadel*.
Nom.	caedēs	arx	caedēs	arcēs
Gen.	caedis	arcis	caedium	arcium
Dat.	caedī	arcī	caedibus	arcibus
Acc.	caedem	arcem	caedēs, -īs	arcēs, -īs
Voc.	caedēs	arx	caedēs	arcēs
Abl.	caede	arce	caedibus	arcibus

1. The following classes of nouns belong to Mixed Stems: —

   a) Nouns in **-ēs**, with Genitive in **-is**; as, **nūbēs**, *cloud;* **aedēs**, *temple, etc.*

   b) Many monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by one or more consonants; as, **urbs**, *city;* **mōns**, *mountain.*

   c) Most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; as, **cliēns**, *client*, **cohors**, *cohort.*

69. VOCABULARY.

cīvitās, tātis, f., *state.*
hostis, is, m., *enemy.*
mare, is, n., *sea.*
mēns, mentis, f., *mind.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
occupō, *I take possession of, seize.*
paucī, ae, a, *few, a few;* used only in pl.
turris, is, f., *tower.*

EXERCISES.

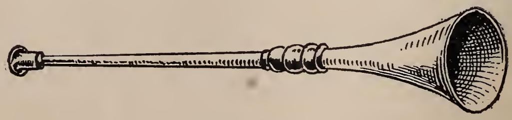
70. 1. Cīvitātum, cīvitātibus. 2. Hostēs, hostīs. 3. Magna animālia, magnīs animālibus. 4. Montēs altī, montibus altīs. 5. Paucae cīvitātēs, paucās cīvitātēs. 6. In turribus altīs, turrīs altās, turrium altārum. 7. Hostēs Rōmānōrum, nōmen montis.

71. 1. Mīlitēs Rōmānī turrīs hostium oppugnant. 2. In magnō marī sunt multae īnsulae. 3. Multa animālia sunt in silvā. 4. Timor mentēs mīlitum occupat. 5. Caesar hostēs proeliō superat. 6. Equitēs Rōmānī cum hostibus dīmicant. 7. Caesar montem occupat. 8. Paucae cīvitātēs pācem cōnfīrmant. 9. Hostēs multās turrīs occupant. 10. Cīvitātēs Gallōrum pācem implōrant.

72. 1. Of high towers; to the large animals; in the deep sea. 2. To the enemy; the camp of the enemy. 3. The minds of the soldiers; the forests of the mountain. 4. The cavalry of the enemy contend with the Romans. 5. Caesar establishes peace with many states. 6. We seize many islands of the sea. 7. There are[1] large animals on the island.

---

[1] *There are large animals:* translate as though "large animals are."



TRUMPET (tuba).

LESSON XIII.

THIRD DECLENSION. — GENDER.

73. General Principles of Gender in the Third Declension.

1. Nouns in **-ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ĕs** are Masculine.

2. Nouns in **-ās, -ēs, -is, -ys, -x, -s** (preceded by a consonant); **-dō, -gō** (Genitive **-inis**); **-iō** (abstract and collective), **-ūs** (Genitive **-ūtis** or **-ūdis**) are Feminine.

3. Nouns in **-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ŭs** are Neuter.

4. There are many exceptions to the foregoing principles.

EXERCISES.

74. 1. Flūminis altī, flūminum altōrum, flūminī altō. 2. Magna maria, magnī maris, in magnō marī. 3. Turris altae, turrīs altās. 4. In magnīs cīvitātibus; parvum animal. 5. In pulchrā turrī; arboris altae, arborēs altae. 6. Magnī timōris, magnī timōrēs. 7. Magna virtūs equitum bonōrum.

75. 1. Hostēs altās turrīs Rōmānōrum oppugnant. 2. Nōmen montis est Jūra. 3. Maria magna sunt alta. 4. Ducēs Rōmānī cum prīncipibus Sēquanōrum pācem cōnfīrmant. 5. Virtūtem ducis hostium laudātis. 6. Animālia pauca sunt in parvā īnsulā. 7. Arborēs pulchrās magnae silvae vāstāmus. 8. Multa genera arborum pulchrārum sunt in agrīs. 9. Aggerem occupat et turrēs hostium oppugnat.

76. 1. To the tall trees; of the beautiful trees; of the beautiful tree. 2. Many kinds of virtue; fear of large animals; the name of the beautiful tower. 3. The names of a few large rivers; to the deep sea; the valor of the consul. 4. On the high ramparts; to the great leaders. 5. We praise the leaders of the enemy. 6. We call the father of the general. 7. The fear of the cavalry is great.

LESSON XIV.

THE FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

FOURTH DECLENSION. — *ŭ*-STEMS.

77. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in **-us** Masculine, and **-ū** Neuter. They are declined as follows: —

	Frūctus, *fruit*.		**Cornū**, *horn*.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	frūctus	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	frūctūs	frūctuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	frūctuī	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	frūctum	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
Voc.	frūctus	frūctūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	frūctū	frūctibus	cornū	cornibus

1. A few nouns in **-us** of the Fourth Declension are Feminine, particularly **manus**, *hand*, and **domus**, *house*.

FIFTH DECLENSION. — *ē*-STEMS.

78. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in **-ēs**, and are declined: —

	Diēs, m., *day*.		**Rēs**, f., *thing*.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	rĕī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	rĕī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Voc.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

1. The ending of the Genitive and Dative Singular is **-ĕī**, instead of **-ēī**, when a consonant precedes; as, **spĕī**, **rĕī**.

2. With the exception of **diēs** and **rēs**, most nouns of the Fifth Declension are not declined in the Plural.

3. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are regularly Feminine, except **diēs**, *day*, and **merīdiēs**, *mid-day*, which are Masculine. Even **diēs** is sometimes Feminine in the Singular.

79. VOCABULARY.

aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle.*
collocō, *I place, arrange, station.*
cornū, ūs, n., *horn;* in military sense, *wing* of an army.
dē, *concerning*, prep. with abl.
dexter, tra, trum, *right.*
dubitō, *I doubt, am in doubt.*
fidēs, ĕī, f., *fidelity, loyalty.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand;* in military sense, *band, force.*
nūntiō, *I announce, report.*
portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*
reliquus, a, um, *remaining.*
senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*
spēs, spĕī, f., *hope.*

EXERCISES.

80. 1. Fideī, dē fidē. 2. Manūs, manibus. 3. In aciē. 4. Cornua, cornuum. 5. Portūs, portibus. 6. Senātūs, senātuī. 7. Spēs auxilī, multī portūs, magnōs portūs. 8. In senātū, dē spē, speī. 9. Portuī bonō, magnus numerus portuum, in portibus bonīs. 10. Multārum rērum, dē multīs rēbus, magnam rem, dē magnā rē.

81. 1. Gallī cum magnā manū legiōnem Rōmānam oppugnant. 2. Reliquae legiōnēs sunt in dextrō cornū. 3. In portū est parva īnsula. 4. Galba dē fidē Gallōrum dubitat. 5. Caesar multās rēs senātuī nūntiat. 6. Mīlitēs in aciē collocat. 7. Sumus in magnā spē victōriae. 8. Portūs īnsulae sunt bonī. 9. Senātum Rōmānum accūsāmus. 10. Dē multīs rēbus dubitant. 11. Caesar legiōnēs in aciē collocat et oppidum oppugnat. 12. Dē fidē multārum legiōnum dubitāmus. 13. Dē reliquīs rēbus dubitātis.

82. 1. Of the senate; to the senate; concerning the senate. 2. In the harbors of the island; of the harbors. 3. Many hopes. 4. The remaining legions. 5. With the remaining legions Caesar attacks the town. 6. In the harbors are many islands. 7. The senate is in doubt concerning the loyalty of the legions. 8. He announces many things to the senate.

LESSON XV.

ADJECTIVES (Continued).

NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

83. Here belong: —

alius, *other, another;* **alter**, *the other;*
ūllus, *any;* **nūllus**, *none, no;*
uter, *which (of two)?* **neuter**, *neither (of two);*
sōlus, *alone;* **tōtus**, *whole;*
ūnus, *one, alone.*

They are declined as follows: —

SINGULAR.

	alius, *another.*			**alter**, *the other.*		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus [1]	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

	uter, *which (of two)?*			**tōtus**, *whole.*		
Nom.	uter	utra	utrum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	utrī	utrī	utrī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	utrum	utram	utrum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	utrō	utrā	utrō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

1. All these words lack the Vocative.
2. The Plural is regular, and is declined like *bonus.*

---

[1] **Alīus**, which we should expect, is not found.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

84. These fall into three classes: —

1. Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative Singular, — one for each gender.
2. Adjectives of two terminations.
3. Adjectives of one termination.

a. With the exception of Comparatives, and a few other words (see § 91. 1), all Adjectives of the Third Declension follow the inflection of **ĭ**-stems; *i.e.* they have **-ī** in the Ablative Singular, **-ium** in the Genitive Plural, **-īs** or **-ēs** in the Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine, and **-ia** in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter.

85. **Adjectives of Three Terminations.**

These are declined as follows: —

Ācer, *sharp*.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**
Gen.	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācris**
Dat.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**
Acc.	**ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācre**
Voc.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**
Abl.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
Gen.	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**
Dat.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**
Acc.	**ācrēs, -īs**	**ācrēs, -īs**	**ācria**
Voc.	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**
Abl.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**

1. **Celer, celeris, celere**, *swift*, retains the **e** before **r**, but lacks the Genitive Plural.

86. VOCABULARY.

ager, **agrī**, m., *field*.
celer, **eris**, **ere**, *swift*.
cohors, **rtis**, f., *cohort*.
collis, **is**, m., *hill*.
conjūrō, *I conspire*.
dēlectō, *I delight*.
dōnō, *I present*.
equester, **tris**, **tre**, *equestrian*, *cavalry* (as an adjective).
prīnceps, **cipis**, m., *chief*.
sine, *without*, prep. with abl.
terra, **ae**, f., *land*.

EXERCISES.

87. 1. Alia terra, alterius terrae. 2. Aliud perīculum, aliōrum perīculōrum. 3. Tōtī cohortī, tōtīus collis. 4. Nūllī agrī, nūllīus agrī. 5. Aliī legiōnī, aliae legiōnēs. 6. Sine ūllā spē, nūllīus cohortis, nūllī collī. 7. Proelia equestria, proeliīs equestribus, proeliōrum equestrium. 8. Ūnum proelium, aliud proelium, aliī proeliō, alterī proeliō. 9. Victōriae celeris, victōriās celerēs, victōriīs celeribus, victōriā celerī.

88. 1. Prīncipēs tōtīus Galliae conjūrant. 2. Dē aliīs rēbus dubitāmus. 3. Sine ūllō timōre alterum oppidum oppugnant. 4. Aliō proeliō dīmicat. 5. Nūllōs mīlitēs alterius cohortis laudāmus. 6. Ūnam legiōnem in dextrō cornū collocat. 7. Collem aliīs cohortibus occupat. 8. Germānīs sōlīs agrōs dōnat. 9. Equestrī proeliō dīmicat. 10. Spēs celeris victōriae legiōnēs dēlectat. 11. Aliōs mīlitēs in aciē collocās. 12. Senātus dē fidē ūnīus ducis dubitat. 13. Equitēs Rōmānī agrōs Belgārum et multārum aliārum cīvitātum vexant.

89. 1. Of the whole cohort; whole cohorts. 2. Of another hill; other hills; on other hills. 3. Of one battle; in one battle. 4. By a cavalry battle; of cavalry battles; in cavalry battles. 5. The soldiers contend without any hope of victory. 6. The legions attack another town. 7. We avoid the dangers of another battle. 8. We are in doubt concerning many other things.

LESSON XVI.

ADJECTIVES (Continued).

90. **Adjectives of Two Terminations.**

Fortis, *strong*.

SINGULAR.

	M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	fortis	forte
Gen.	fortis	fortis
Dat.	fortī	fortī
Acc.	fortem	forte
Voc.	fortis	forte
Abl.	fortī	fortī

PLURAL.

	M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortēs, -īs	fortia
Voc.	fortēs	fortia
Abl.	fortibus	fortibus

Fortior, *stronger*.

SINGULAR.

	M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	fortior	fortius
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius
Voc.	fortior	fortius
Abl.	fortiōre	fortiōre

PLURAL.

	M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Voc.	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

1. **Fortior** is the Comparative of **fortis**. All Comparatives are regularly declined in the same way.

91. **Adjectives of One Termination.**

Ferāx, *fertile*.

SINGULAR.

	M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	ferāx	ferāx
Gen.	ferācis	ferācis
Dat.	ferācī	ferācī
Acc.	ferācem	ferāx
Voc.	ferāx	ferāx
Abl.	ferācī	ferācī

Recēns, *recent*.

SINGULAR.

	M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	recēns	recēns
Gen.	recentis	recentis
Dat.	recentī	recentī
Acc.	recentem	recēns
Voc.	recēns	recēns
Abl.	recentī	recentī

	PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	ferācēs	ferācia	recentēs	recentia
Gen.	ferācium	ferācium	recentium	recentium
Dat.	ferācibus	ferācibus	recentibus	recentibus
Acc.	ferācēs, -īs	ferācia	recentēs, -īs	recentia
Voc.	ferācēs	ferācia	recentēs	recentia
Abl.	ferācibus	ferācibus	recentibus	recentibus

	Vetus, *old.*		**Plūs**, *more.*	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	vetus	vetus	——	plūs
Gen.	veteris	veteris	——	plūris
Dat.	veterī	veterī	——	——
Acc.	veterem	vetus	——	plūs
Voc.	vetus	vetus	——	——
Abl.	vetere	vetere	——	plūre
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	veterēs	vetera	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	veterum	veterum	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	veteribus	veteribus	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	veterēs	vetera	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
Voc.	veterēs	vetera	——	——
Abl.	veteribus	veteribus	plūribus	plūribus

1. **Fortior** and **vetus** are declined as pure Consonant-Stems; *i.e.* Ablative Singular in **-e**, Genitive Plural in **-um**, Nominative Plural Neuter in **-a**, and Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine in **-ēs** only.

2. **Plūs**, in the Singular, is used only as a substantive.

92. VOCABULARY.

aditus, **ūs**, m., *approach.*
adulēscēns, **entis**, m., *young man.*
commūnis, **e**, *common.*
complūrēs, **ra**, **-ium**, *very many.*
concilium, **ī** (**iī**), n., *council.*
dēlīberō, *I deliberate, consult.*
difficilis, **e**, *difficult.*
ferāx, gen. **ferācis**, *fertile.*
fidēs, **eī**, f., *protection.*
Haedui, **ōrum**, m. pl., *Haedui*, a Gallic tribe.
incolumis, **e**, *unharmed.*
lēgātus, **ī**, m., *envoy.*
nāvālis, **e**, *naval.*
nōbilis, **e**, *noble.*
omnis, **e**, *all, every.*
tribūnus, **ī**, m., *tribune.*
Venetī, **ōrum**, m. pl., *Veneti*, a Gallic tribe.

EXERCISES.

93. 1. Agrōrum ferācium, in agrīs ferācibus. 2. Omnibus aditibus, omnīs aditūs. 3. Nōbilis adulēscentis, nōbilium adulēscentium. 4. Proelia nāvālia, proeliīs nāvālibus. 5. Concilia commūnia, conciliīs commūnibus. 6. In omnibus proeliīs, omnium proeliōrum, omnīs lēgātōs. 7. Terrae ferācēs, terrārum ferācium, complūrēs lēgātī Rōmānī. 8. Omnīs agrōs Haeduōrum, in omnibus adulēscentibus, complūrium victōriārum. 9. Lēgātōrum nōbilium, omnibus tribūnīs legiōnis.

94. 1. Mīlitēs Rōmānī sunt incolumēs. 2. Cum omnibus cōpiīs oppidum oppugnat. 3. Helvētiī agrōs ferācēs Haeduōrum vexant. 4. Tribūnōs omnium legiōnum vocat. 5. Complūrēs lēgātī fidem Caesaris implōrant. 6. Belgae in conciliō commūnī dē bellō dēlīberant. 7. Nōbilēs adulēscentēs accūsat. 8. Rōmānī Venetōs proeliō nāvālī superant. 9. Omnēs aditūs sunt difficilēs. 10. Adulēscēns nōbilis est incolumis. 11. Nūllus vir fortis perīcula commūnia vītat. 12. Lēgātī Haeduōrum sunt nōbilēs adulēscentēs. 13. Omnia oppida Rōmānōrum sunt incolumia.

95. 1. In a fertile field; of fertile fields. 2. Of very many young men; with very many young men. 3. Of the common council; with noble envoys; in naval battles. 4. The young man is unharmed. 5. All the fields of the Haedui are fertile. 6. All the envoys of the Gauls entreat Caesar's help. 7. He praises all the tribunes of the legion.

LESSON XVII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

96. 1. In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of Comparison, — the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

2. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (Neut. **-ius**), and the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a**, **-um**), to the Genitive Singular of the Positive deprived of its ending: —

altus, *high*,	alt**ior**, *higher*,	alt**issimus**, { *highest*, *very high*.
fortis, *brave*,	fort**ior**,	fort**issimus**.
fēlīx, *fortunate*,	fēlīc**ior**,	fēlīc**issimus**.

3. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative of the Positive. The Comparative is regular. Thus: —

pulcher, *beautiful*,	pulchr**ior**,	pulcher**rimus**.
celer, *swift*,	celer**ior**,	celer**rimus**.

4. Five adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative by adding **-limus** to the Genitive of the Positive deprived of its ending. The Comparative is regular. Thus: —

facilis, *easy*,	facil**ior**,	facil**limus**.
difficilis, *difficult*,	difficil**ior**,	difficil**limus**.
similis, *like*,	simil**ior**,	simil**limus**.
dissimilis, *unlike*,	dissimil**ior**,	dissimil**limus**.
humilis, *low*,	humil**ior**,	humil**limus**.

97. VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *Allóbroges*, a Gallic tribe.
Avāricum, ī, n., *Avâricum*, a Gallic town.
fortis, e, *brave*.
urbs, urbis, f., *city*.
vallis, is, f., *valley*.

EXERCISES.

98. 1. Urbēs pulchriōrēs, urbium pulcherrimārum, urbēs pulcherrimae. 2. In vallibus pulcherrimīs, vallium pulcherrimārum. 3. Legiōnēs fortiōrēs, legiōnum fortissimārum. 4. Aggerum altiōrum, flūmina altissima. 5. Aditū difficillimō, aditūs difficiliōrēs. 6. Fīliae pulchriōrēs, fīliābus pulchriōribus.

99. 1. Belgae sunt fortissimī omnium Gallōrum. 2. Flūmina Galliae sunt altiōra. 3. Mīlitēs castra altissima oppugnant. 4. Oppida Allobrogum sunt pulcherrima. 5. Vīcus parvus est in valle pulcherrimā. 6. In exercitū Gallōrum est magnus numerus equitum fortissimōrum. 7. Avāricum est pulcherrima urbs tōtīus Galliae. 8. Aditūs sunt difficillimī.

100. 1. Braver soldiers; of braver soldiers; with the bravest soldiers. 2. The most difficult approaches; by the most difficult approaches; by a more difficult approach. 3. Of the braver legion; with the bravest legion. 4. The higher camp; in the highest camp. 5. Galba is the bravest leader. 6. The approaches of the valley are most beautiful.

LESSON XVIII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

101. **Irregular Comparison.**

Several Adjectives vary the Stem in Comparison; *viz.*,—

bonus, *good*,	mel**ior**,	opt**imus**.	magnus, *large*,	maj**or**,	max**imus**.
malus, *bad*,	pej**or**,	pess**imus**.	multus, *much*,	plūs,	plūr**imus**.
parvus, *small*,	min**or**,	min**imus**.			

102. **Defective Comparison.**

1. Positive lacking entirely,—

———	pr**ior**, *former*,	prī**mus**, *first*.
———	citer**ior**, *on this side*,	cit**imus**, *near*.
———	ulter**ior**, *farther*,	ult**imus**, *farthest*.
———	prop**ior**, *nearer*,	prox**imus**, *nearest*.

2. Positive occurring only in special cases,—

posterus, *following*,	poster**ior**, *later*,	postrē**mus**, *last*. / postu**mus**, *posthumous*.
exterus, *foreign*,	exter**ior**, *outer*,	extrē**mus**, / ext**imus**, } *outermost*.
īnferus, *low*,	īnfer**ior**, *lower*,	īnf**imus**, / ī**mus**, } *lowest*.
superus, *high*,	super**ior**, *higher*,	suprē**mus**, *last*. / sum**mus**, *highest*.

103. **VOCABULARY.**

altitūdō, inis, f., *depth, height*.
Genava, ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges.
quattuor, indecl., *four*.
quīnque, indecl., *five*.
summus, a, um, *highest, greatest* (superl. of **superus**).

Principle of Syntax.

104. Ablative of Manner. The Ablative modified by an Adjective is used to denote Manner; as, — **magnā virtūte pugnant,** *they fight with great valor.*

EXERCISES.

105. 1. Majōra perīcula, maximīs perīculīs. 2. Minōribus castrīs, minōrum castrōrum. 3. Maximī oppidī, maxima oppida. 4. Vallēs majōrēs, in vallibus majōribus. 5. Oppida proxima, oppidōrum ultimōrum. 6. Majōrum castrōrum, majōra castra. 7. Urbium proximārum, in urbibus proximīs, legiōnēs optimae. 8. Legiōnum meliōrum, legiōnibus pejōribus. 9. Summus mōns, summa virtūs.

106. 1. Reliquae cohortēs minōra castra oppugnant. 2. Altitūdō flūminis est minima. 3. In castrīs majōribus sunt quīnque legiōnēs. 4. Maximās cōpiās parāmus. 5. Quattuor cohortēs in prīmā aciē sunt. 6. Genava est extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum. 7. Mīlitēs minōre perīculō dīmicant. 8. Legiōnēs Rōmānae agrōs optimōs vāstant. 9. Mīlitēs ūnīus cohortis in majōribus castrīs maximā virtūte dīmicant.

107. 1. Of the first legion; with the first legion. 2. The larger camp; in the smaller camp. 3. Of the greatest depth; in the farthest town. 4. The soldiers of the first legion attack the smaller camp. 5. We avoid the greatest dangers.

LESSON XIX.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

108. Adverbs denote manner, degree, place, time, *etc.* They are for the most part derived from adjectives, and depend upon them for their comparison.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive by changing **-ī** of the Genitive Singular to **-ē**; those derived from adjectives of the Third Declension, by changing **-is** of the Genitive Singular to **-iter**; as, —

cārus,	cār**ē**, *dearly;*
pulcher,	pulchr**ē**, *beautifully;*
ācer,	ācr**iter**, *fiercely.*

a. But Adjectives in **-ns** change **-is** of the Genitive to **-er** to form the Adverb; as, —

sapiēns, sapient**er**, *wisely.*

Audāx forms audāc**ter**.

2. To form the Comparative of the Adverb, change **-or** of the Comparative of the Adjective to **-us**; to form the Superlative, change **-us** of the Superlative of the Adjective to **-ē**.

(cārus)	cār**ē**, *dearly,*	cār**ius**,	cār**issimē**.
(pulcher)	pulchr**ē**, *beautifully,*	pulchr**ius**,	pulcher**rimē**.
(ācer)	ācr**iter**, *fiercely,*	ācr**ius**,	ācer**rimē**.
(audāx)	audā**cter**, *boldly,*	audā**cius**,	audā**cissimē**.

109. Adverbs Peculiar in Comparison and Formation.

benĕ, *well,*	mel**ius**,	opt**imē**.
malĕ, *ill,*	pej**us**,	pess**imē**.
magnopere, *greatly,*	mag**is**,	max**imē**.

multum, *much*,	plūs,	plūrimum.
nōn multum, parum, } *little*,	minus,	minimē.
saepe, *often*,	saepius,	saepissimē.
prope, *near*,	propius,	proximē.
diū, *long*,	diūtius,	diūtissimē.

110. VOCABULARY.

ācriter, *sharply*, *fiercely* (from **ācer**).
audācter, *courageously* (from **audāx**).
cōgitō, *I think*.
dēfēnsiō, **ōnis**, f., *defence*.
diū, adv., *a long time*.
facile, *easily* (from **facilis**).
fortiter, *bravely* (from **fortis**).
fuga, **ae**, f., *flight*.
impetus, **ūs**, m., *onset*, *attack*.
magis, *more*, *rather*; comp. of **magnopere**.
maximē, *especially*; sup. of **magnopere**.
perturbō, *I agitate*; *disturb*.
pugnō, *I fight*.
quam, *than*.
tardō, *I retard*, *check*.

EXERCISES.

111. 1. Melius, magis, minus fortiter, optimē. 2. Fortius, maximē, propius, saepissimē. 3. Diūtissimē, ācerrimē, pejus. 4. Facilius, minus facile, minimē facile.

112. 1. Hostēs diū[1] et ācriter pugnant. 2. Mīlitēs magis dē fugā quam dē dēfēnsiōne castrōrum cōgitant. 3. Jūmenta Gallōs maximē dēlectant. 4. Timor mentēs mīlitum magnopere perturbat. 5. Mīlitēs ācerrimē et fortissimē pugnant. 6. Caesar impetum hostium facile tardat. 7. Equitēs minus audācter dīmicant.

113. 1. More fiercely; most fiercely; most courageously. 2. Most easily; less easily. 3. More often; greatly; in a worse way. 4. The Belgians fight more bravely than the Sequani. 5. The Romans overcome the Gauls most easily. 6. We praise your daughters very often (superlative).

---

[1] The adverb usually stands immediately before the word it modifies.

LESSON XX.

114. NUMERALS.

1. For the declension of **ūnus**, *one*, see p. 33.

2. **Duo**, *two*, and **trēs**, *three*, are declined as follows: —

Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

Nom.	trēs	tria
Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	trēs (trīs)	tria
Abl.	tribus	tribus

3. The units from four to ten, and all the tens from ten to one hundred, are indeclinable. Hundreds are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

4. **Mīlle**, *thousand*, is regularly an adjective in the Singular, and indeclinable. In the Plural it is a substantive (followed by the Genitive of the objects enumerated) and is declined, —

Nom.	mīlia	*Acc.*	mīlia
Gen.	mīlium	*Voc.*	mīlia
Dat.	mīlibus	*Abl.*	mīlibus

Examples: **mīlle hominēs**, *a thousand men;* **duo mīlia hominum**, *two thousand men* (literally, *two thousands of men*).

115. VOCABULARY.

clārus, a, um, *distinguished, famous.*
ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred.*
īnstō, *I press on.*
quīnquāgintā, indecl., *fifty.*
septem, indecl., *seven.*
trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*

Principle of Syntax.

116. Ablative of Means. The Ablative is used to denote the Means or Instrument; as, —

gladiīs pugnant, *they fight with swords.*

EXERCISES.

117. 1. Trecentōrum equitum. 2. Cum tribus fīliābus. 3. Tria oppida, in tribus oppidīs. 4. Duo mīlia equitum, mīlle equitēs. 5. In duābus terrīs. 6. In tribus legiōnibus, duo fīliī, duōs fīliōs, trēs prīncipēs. 7. Nōmina duōrum prīncipum, tribus fīliābus.

118. 1. Duae legiōnēs audācius īnstant. 2. Trecentī Germānī sunt in castrīs. 3. Tria mīlia equitum in proeliō pugnant. 4. Ūnus Rōmānus trēs adulēscentēs Germānōs superat. 5. Mīlle equitēs Rōmānī cum tribus mīlibus Gallōrum dīmicant. 6. Ducentī equitēs septem vīcōs vāstant. 7. Nōmina quīnquāgintā Rōmānōrum sunt clāra.

119. 1. Of three cities, in three battles, two daughters. 2. A thousand Gauls; with three thousand Germans. 3. Of one soldier; of two towns; for three villages. 4. With three hundred soldiers; of three hundred cavalry. 5. Two thousand cavalry. 6. We contend with three thousand Gauls. 7. Three hundred Romans retard the onset of a thousand Gauls.

REVIEW.

120. 1. Sine ūllō perīculō alterum oppidum Belgārum oppugnāmus. 2. Duās legiōnēs in dextrō cornū collocās. 3. Quattuor lēgātī Germānōrum auxilium Caesaris, ducis Rōmānī, implōrant. 4. In oppidō majōre sunt trēs legiōnēs. 5. Duōs collēs altissimōs occupāmus. 6. Ācerrimē et fortissimē dīmicātis. 7. Legiōnēs castra minōra oppugnant.

8. Collem quīnque aliīs legiōnibus occupat. 9. Virtūtem ducum Rōmānōrum et mīlitum laudāmus. 10. Dux maximās cōpiās parat. 11. Virtūtem tōtīus aciēī laudāmus. 12. Adulēscēns nōbilis victōriam cōpiārum Rōmānārum senātuī nūntiat. 13. Trēs legiōnēs in alterō cornū collocat.



IMPERATOR. LEGATUS. CENTURIO. LICTOR.

LESSON XXI.

PRONOUNS.

121. A Pronoun is a word that indicates something without naming it.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

122. These correspond to the English *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *etc.*, and are declined as follows: —

	First Person.	*Second Person.*	*Third Person.*
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	ego, *I*	tū, *thou*	is, *he*; ea, *she*; id, *it*
Gen.	meī	tuī	(For Declension, see § 137.)
Dat.	mihi	tibi	
Acc.	mē	tē	
Voc.	——	tū	
Abl.	mē	tē	
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	nōs, *we*	vōs, *you*	
Gen.	nostrum / nostrī	vestrum / vestrī	
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	
Acc.	nōs	vōs	
Voc.	——	vōs	
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	

II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

123. These refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand; like *myself*, *yourself*, in '*I see myself*,' *etc.* They are declined as follows: —

	First Person.	*Second Person.*	*Third Person.*
Gen.	meī, *of myself*	tuī, *of thyself*	suī
Dat.	mihi, *to myself*	tibi, *to thyself*	sibi
Acc.	mē, *myself*	tē, *thyself*	sē *or* sēsē
Voc.	——	——	——
Abl.	mē, *with myself, etc.*	tē, *with thyself, etc.*	sē *or* sēsē

1. The Reflexive of the Third Person serves for *all genders* and for *both numbers*. Thus **suī** may mean, *of himself, herself, itself,* or *of themselves;* and so with the other cases of **suī**.

III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

124. These are strictly *adjectives* of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected as such. They are: —

First Person.

meus, -a, -um, *my;*
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our;*

Second Person.

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your* (of one person);
vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (more than one person);

Third Person.

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their.*

1. **Suus** is exclusively Reflexive; as, —

pater līberōs suōs amat, *the father loves his children.*

Otherwise, *his, her, its,* are regularly expressed by the Genitive Singular of **is**, *viz.* **ejus**; and *their*, by the Genitive Plural, **eōrum, eārum.**

125. VOCABULARY.

ad, *to*,[1] *towards*, prep. w. acc.
amīcē, *in a friendly manner.*
culpō, *I blame.*
Dumnorīx, īgis, m., *Dumnorix*, a chief of the Haedui.
gladius, ī (iī), m., *sword.*
grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome.*
imperātor, ōris, m., *commander.*
jūdicō, *I judge, adjudge.*
memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection.*
officium, ī (iī), n., *duty.*
praēstō, *I perform.*
probō, *I approve.*
quoque, *also*, always placed after the word it modifies.
verbum, ī, n., *word.*

[1] English *to* is rendered by *ad* in Latin, if there is an idea of *motion;* otherwise the Dative is used.

Principle of Syntax.

126. Dative of Indirect Object. The Dative is used to denote the Indirect Object; as, **dōna mihi dat**, *he gives me presents*, or, *gives presents to me.*

EXERCISES.

127. 1. Mihi, nōbīs, nōs. 2. Suī, sibi. 3. Tē, vōbīs, vestrī. 4. Tū, meī, vōs, tibi, vestrum, mē, sē. 5. Pater meus,[1] pater noster, patrum nostrōrum. 6. Patris tuī, patrēs vestrī. 7. Gladius meus, imperātōrī nostrō, officiōrum vestrōrum.

128. 1. Ego officium meum[1] imperātōrī praestō. 2. Caesar nōs ācriter accūsat. 3. Tua nostrī memoria mihi est grāta. 4. Ad sē Dumnorīgem vocat. 5. Caesar dē vōbīs amīcissimē jūdicat. 6. Tū quoque verba mea probās. 7. Ego mē accūsō. 8. Sē culpant. 9. Equitēs nostrī gladiīs suīs pugnant.

129. 1. Of us; to you; to himself; to themselves. 2. My father; our father; our fathers. 3. Of your friend; of your friends; to my friends. 4. We call the soldiers to us (= to ourselves). 5. No other commander blames his soldiers. 6. My daughter calls me. 7. You call your son to you (= to yourself).

---

[1] The Possessive Pronouns, unless emphatic, are ordinarily placed after the noun which they limit.

LESSON XXII.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

130. These point out an object as **here** or **there**, or as **previously mentioned.** They are: —

hīc, *this;* **iste, ille, is**, *that;* **īdem**, *the same.*

Hīc, *this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

131. **Iste**, *that, that of yours.*

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus
Dat.	istī	istī	istī
Acc.	istum	istam	istud
Abl.	istō	istā	istō

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istīs	istīs	istīs

132. **Ille**, *that, that one, he,* is declined like **iste.**

133. VOCABULARY.

cārus, a, um, *dear.*
causa, ae, f., *cause, condition.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly.*
opīniō, ōnis, f., *opinion, expectation.*
salūs, ūtis, f., *safety.*
servus, ī, m., *slave.*

EXERCISES.

134. 1. Hūjus[1] patris, hōrum patrum. 2. Huic puerō, hōs virōs. 3. Hōrum castrōrum, huic fīliae, hīs fīliābus. 4. Illīus virī, istōrum virōrum; illīus opīniōnis, illae opīniōnēs. 5. In istō exercitū, istīus exercitūs. 6. Illīs causīs, illī causae, in illā causā. 7. Illud bellum, istud proelium, ista proelia.

135. 1. Istī mīlitēs sunt ignāvī. 2. Officia illī praestāmus. 3. In illō exercitū sunt multī servī. 4. Hīc pater fīliās suās vocat. 5. Vestra salūs, mīlitēs, huic imperātōrī cārissima est. 6. Hōs puerōs ad nōs vocāmus. 7. In hōc proeliō equestrī audācissimē pugnant. 8. Mīlitēs nostrī illum difficiliōrem aditum fortiter oppugnant. 9. Dux illīus exercitūs est ignāvissimus. 10. Hōc bellum est ācerrimum.

136. 1. That opinion; of those opinions; of those armies. 2. To this commander; of these commanders; of these trees. 3. That slave (of yours); of those slaves. 4. The leaders of these armies are cowardly. 5. Those duties are most difficult. 6. With all these legions Caesar attacks that town. 7. Those mountains are high.

---

[1] A Demonstrative Pronoun, like an adjective, agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with the noun it limits. Demonstrative Pronouns regularly precede the noun which they limit.

LESSON XXIII.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (Continued). — THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

137. **Is**, *that*, *this; he*, *she*, *it*.

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	is	ea	id
Gen.	ejus	ejus	ejus
Dat.	eī	eī	eī
Acc.	eum	eam	id
Abl.	eō	eā	eō

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	eī *or* iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eīs *or* iīs	eīs *or* iīs	eīs *or* iīs
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eīs *or* iīs	eīs *or* iīs	eīs *or* iīs

138. **Īdem**, *the same*.

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	eīdem / iīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

The Nom. Pl. Masc. also has **īdem**, and the Dat. Abl. Pl. **īsdem** or **iīsdem**.

V. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

139. The Intensive Pronoun in Latin is **ipse**. It corresponds to the English *myself*, *etc.*, in '*I myself*, *he himself*.'

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

140. VOCABULARY.

bene, *well*.
facultās, ātis, f., *abundance, supply*.
labor, ōris, m., *labor*.
sex, indecl., *six*.
summus, *highest*, *greatest*; sup. of **superus** (§ 102, 2).

EXERCISES.

141. 1. Ejusdem exercitūs, in eōdem exercitū. 2. Eae causae, dē eīs causīs. 3. Eōrundem labōrum, eīsdem labōri-

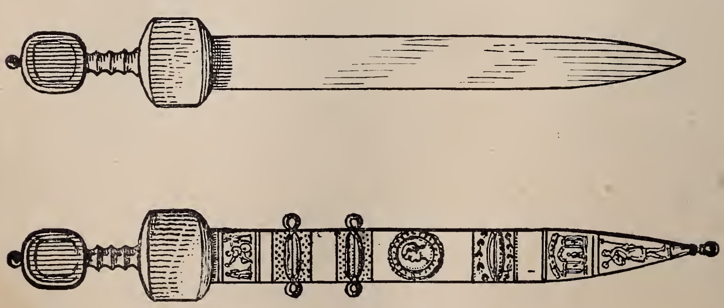
bus. 4. Servī ipsīus, servōs ipsōs. 5. Eōdem labōre, ejusdem opīniōnis, eārundem portārum. 6. In eādem causā, eadem castra, eīdem exercituī.

142. 1. Ejus nōmen est Galba. 2. Dē eā causā bene jūdicat. 3. Sex cohortēs ejus legiōnis portās ipsās oppidī oppugnant. 4. Dē eīsdem rēbus jūdicāmus. 5. In eādem causā sunt aliī Gallī. 6. Eīdem equitēs illum laudant. 7. In eō oppidō est summa facultās omnium rērum. 8. Eam ad nōs vocō. 9. Patrem eōrum laudō.

143. 1. The same causes; of the same armies, concerning the same duties. 2. That gate; of those gates. 3. Of the slave himself; concerning the slaves themselves. 4. I call him; I call her; I call them. 5. I call his[1] father; I call their[1] father. 6. We praise the commander himself of that army. 7. That camp is on the island itself.

---

[1] *I.e.* 'the father of him,' 'the father of them.' **Suus** must not be used here; § 124, 1.



Sword (gladius).

LESSON XXIV.

RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

VI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

144. The Relative Pronoun is **quī**, *who.* It is declined: —

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

145. The Interrogative Pronouns are **quis**, *who?* (substantive) and **quī**, *what? what kind of?* (adjective).

1. **Quis**, *who?*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.	
Nom.	quis	quid	Inflected like the Plural of the Relative Pronoun.
Gen.	cūjus	cūjus	
Dat.	cui	cui	
Acc.	quem	quid	
Abl.	quō	quō	

2. **Quī**, *what? what kind of?* is declined precisely like the Relative Pronoun; *viz.* **quī, quae, quod,** *etc.*

VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

146. These have the general force of *some one, any one,* as shown in the following list: —

SUBSTANTIVES.		ADJECTIVES.		
M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
aliquis,	aliquid, *some one, something.*	aliquī,	aliqua,	aliquod, *some.*
quisquam,	quidquam, *any one, anything.*	——	——	——
quisque,	quidque, *each.*	quisque,	quaeque,	quodque, *each.*
quīdam, quaedam,	quiddam, *a certain person* or *thing.*	quīdam,	quaedam,	quoddam, *a certain.*

1. In the Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined. Thus: Genitive Singular **alicūjus, cūjusquam,** *etc.*

2. Note that **aliquī** has **aliqua** in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter.

3. **Quīdam** forms Accusative Singular **quendam, quandam**; Genitive Plural **quōrundam, quārundam**; the **m** being changed to **n** before **d**.

147. Principle of Syntax.

Agreement of Relative Pronouns. The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its Case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands; as,—

> **mulier quam laudāmus,** *the woman whom we praise;*
> **oppida quae oppugnāmus,** *the towns which we attack.*

148. VOCABULARY.

armō, *I arm.*
dubitō, *I hesitate, waver.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader.*
errō, *I err, am mistaken.*
fugō, *I put to flight.*
hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter-quarters.*
homō, minis, m., *man, human being.*
praeda, ae, f., *booty.*
sī, *if.*
spērō, *I hope, hope for;* governs the acc.

EXERCISES.

149. 1. Mīles quīdam, mīlitibus quibusdam. 2. Quī homō? Quod oppidum? 3. Cuique cīvitātī, cūjusque

servī. 4. Praeda aliqua, in proeliō aliquō. 5. Homō quīdam, hominis cūjusdam. 6. Quamque cohortem. Cūjus[1] auctōritās? In quā cīvitāte? 7. Oppidōrum quōrundam, in oppidīs quibusdam, virō cuidam. 8. Cuiquam, quidquam, cūjusquam. 9. Mulierēs, quās laudās. 10. Oppidum, cūjus incolās oppugnāmus. 11. Collēs, quōs occupat. 12. Amīcus, cui gladium dōnō. 13. Amīcī, quibus gladiōs dōnātis. 14. Perīcula, quae vītant. 15. Cōpiae, quas proeliō vexāmus. 16. Gallī, quōrum[1] auxilium implōrāmus. 17. Amīcus, quem amō. 18. Agricolae, quōrum[1] fīliās amāmus.

150. 1. Cohortēs quāsdam in hībernīs collocat. 2. Sī quisquam salūtem spērat, errat. 3. Dux mīlitibus, quī oppidum oppugnant, praedam dōnat. 4. Legiōnēs laudat quae hostīs fugant. 5. Servōs armat quī in castrīs sunt. 6. Collem quendam occupat. 7. Quis hunc hominem accūsat? 8. Caesar prīncipēs cūjusque cīvitātis ad sē vocat. 9. Quod oppidum oppugnātis? 10. Quae castra hī mīlitēs oppugnant? 11. Quis vestrum salūtem urbis spērat? 12. Hīc imperātor legiōnēs culpat quae perīcula vītant.

151. 1. A certain man; of certain men; concerning certain things. 2. To each cause; some cause; some men. 3. What man? What battle? 4. Of each army; concerning each slave. 5. This commander arms certain legions. 6. Booty delights some soldiers. 7. What towns (do)[2] the soldiers attack? 8. They attack a certain town of the Belgians.

---

[1] *Cūjus* and *quōrum* (lit. *of whom*) are often best translated *whose*.

[2] This word is not to be translated.

LESSON XXV.

CONJUGATION.

152. A Verb is a word which asserts something; as, **est**, *he is;* **amat**, *he loves.* The inflection of Verbs is called Conjugation.

153. Verbs have Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person:

1. Two voices, — Active and Passive.

   The Active Voice represents the subject as *acting* or *being;* as, **videō**, *I see;* **sum**, *I am.* The Passive Voice represents the subject as acted upon; as, **vocāmur**, *we are called.*

2. Three Moods, — Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.

   The Indicative Mood is used in stating facts, or inquiring after facts; as, **spērō**, *I hope;* **quid spērās**, *what do you hope?*

   The force of the Subjunctive is explained in the Syntax (Part III.).

   The Imperative is used in commands, requests, entreaties, *etc.*

3. Six Tenses, — Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect. These correspond respectively to the English Present, Past, Future, Present Perfect, Past Perfect, Future Perfect.

   But the Subjunctive lacks the Future and Future Perfect, while the Imperative employs only the Present and Future.

4. Two Numbers, — Singular and Plural.

5. Three Persons, — First, Second, and Third.

154. These make up the so-called *Finite Verb*. Besides this, we have the following Noun and Adjective Forms:—

1. Noun Forms,—Infinitive, Gerund, and Supine.
2. Adjective Forms,—Participles (including the Gerundive).

155. **Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.** Verbs that take a Direct Object are Transitive Verbs; as, **tē amāmus**, *we love you*. Other verbs are Intransitive; as, **īmus**, *we go*, **manēmus**, *we remain*.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

156. There are in Latin four regular Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the first vowel of the termination of the Present Infinitive Active, as follows:—

Conjugation.	Infinitive Termination.	Distinguishing Vowel.
I.	**-āre**	**ā**
II.	**-ēre**	**ē**
III.	**-ĕre**	**ĕ**
IV.	**-īre**	**ī**

PRINCIPAL PARTS AND VERB-STEMS.

157. 1. Principal Parts. The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Perfect Participle[1] constitute the **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb,—so called because they contain the different stems, from which the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

2. Verb Stems. Conjugation consists in adding certain endings to the different Stems of the Verb, as will be explained more fully later.

---

[1] Where the Perfect Participle is not in use, the Future Active Participle, if it occurs, is given as one of the Principal Parts.

INDICATIVE OF *sum*.

158. The irregular verb **sum** is so important for the conjugation of all other verbs that its inflection is given at the outset.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Fut. Partic.[1]
sum	**esse**	**fuī**	**futūrus**

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
sum, *I am*,	**sumus**, *we are*,
es, *thou art*, *you are*,	**estis**, *you are*,
est, *he is;*	**sunt**, *they are.*

Imperfect.

eram, *I was*,	**erāmus**, *we were*,
erās, *thou wast*, *you were*,	**erātis**, *you were*,
erat, *he was;*	**erant**, *they were.*

Future.

Singular.	Plural.
erō, *I shall be*,	**erimus**, *we shall be*,
eris, *thou wilt be*, *you will be*,	**eritis**, *you will be*,
erit, *he will be;*	**erunt**, *they will be.*

Perfect.

fuī, *I have been*, *I was*,[2]	**fuimus**, *we have been*, *we were*,
fuistī, *thou hast been*, *thou wast*, *you were*,	**fuistis**, *you have been*, *you were*,
fuit, *he has been*, *he was;*	**fuērunt**, **fuēre**, } *they have been*, *they were.*

Pluperfect.

fueram, *I had been*,	**fuerāmus**, *we had been*,
fuerās, *thou hadst been*, *you had been*,	**fuerātis**, *you had been*,
fuerat, *he had been;*	**fuerant**, *they had been.*

Future Perfect.

fuerō, *I shall have been*,	**fuerimus**, *we shall have been*,
fueris, *thou wilt* (*you will*) *have been*,	**fueritis**, *you will have been*,
fuerit, *he will have been;*	**fuerint**, *they will have been.*

---

[1] The Perfect Participle is wanting in **sum**.

[2] These two meanings are designated respectively as the Present Perfect (*I have been*) and the Historical Perfect (*I was*).

159. VOCABULARY.

ante, *before*, *in front of*, prep. with acc.
Bibulus, ī, m., *Bibulus* (a man's name).
fīrmus, a, um, *firm*, *strong*.
fossa, ae, f., *ditch*, *trench*.
ibi, adv., *there*, *in that place*.
inopia, ae, f., *lack*, *need*.
nōndum, *not yet*.
quondam, *formerly*.
ubi, *where*, rel. and interr. adv.

EXERCISES.

160. 1. Erātis, fuerat, fuistis. 2. Estis, fuerimus, fuerant. 3. Eritis, erant, fuēre. 4. Fuistī, erimus, erās. 5. Fuerās, fueris, fueritis. 6. Erō, erunt, fuerint. 7. Eris, fuerātis, erit. 8. Sunt meliōrēs, es melior, fuistis optimī. 9. Erāmus amīcī, sumus lēgātī. 10. Agricola fuerat, agricolae sumus.

161. 1. Fossa erat ante oppidum. 2. Hī lēgātī in castrīs Caesaris fuerant. 3. Haec cīvitās quondam fuerat fīrmissima. 4. Hae septem legiōnēs in Italiā erant. 5. Quis fuit dux hōrum mīlitum? 6. Caesar et Bibulus cōnsulēs fuērunt. 7. Magna erit inopia omnium rērum. 8. Ubi fuistis? 9. In oppidō Haeduōrum fuimus. 10. Nōndum ibi fuerāmus. 11. Ubi pater noster fuit? 12. Vōs, mīlitēs, quī omnia perīcula vītātis, ignāvissimī estis. 13. In illō oppidō Belgārum nōndum fuerātis.

162. 1. We were; we shall be; we had been. 2. I have been; he will have been; he will be. 3. You have been; you were; they will have been. 4. I have not yet been consul. 5. These consuls were cowardly. 6. Where had your father been? 7. He had been in the camp of the enemy. 8. We have been in many towns of the Gauls. 9. Before this camp was a deep trench.

LESSON XXVI.

CONJUGATION (Continued).

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *sum*.[1]

163.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sim, *may I be*,	**sīmus**, *let us be, may we be*,
sīs, *be thou, mayest thou be*,	**sītis**, *be ye, may you be*,
sit, *let him be, may he be;*	**sint**, *let them be, may they be.*

IMPERFECT.

essem, *I should be*,	**essēmus**, *we should be*,
essēs, *thou wouldst be*,	**essētis**, *you would be*,
esset, *he would be;*	**essent**, *they would be.*

PERFECT.

fuerim	**fuerīmus**
fuerīs	**fuerītis**
fuerit	**fuerint**

(The meanings of the Perfect Subjunctive must be learned in subordinate clauses.)

PLUPERFECT.

fuissem, *I should have been*,	**fuissēmus**, *we should have been*,
fuissēs, *thou wouldst have been*,	**fuissētis**, *you would have been*,
fuisset, *he would have been;*	**fuissent**, *they would have been.*

Imperative.

Pres. **es**, *be thou;*	**este**, *be ye.*
Fut. **estō**, *thou shalt be*,	**estōte**, *ye shall be.*
estō, *he shall be;*	**suntō**, *they shall be.*

Infinitive.	Participle.
Pres. **esse**, *to be.*	
Perf. **fuisse**, *to have been.*	
Fut. **futūrus esse**,[2] *to be about to be.*	*Fut.* **futūrus**,[3] *about to be.*

---

[1] The meanings of the different tenses of the Subjunctive are so many and so varied, particularly in subordinate clauses, that no attempt can be made to give them here. For fuller information the pupil is referred to the Syntax.

[2] For **futūrus esse** the form **fore** is often used.

[3] Decline like **bonus, -a, -um**.

164. VOCABULARY.

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship*.
beātus, a, um, *happy*.
brevis, e, *short, brief*.
cīvis, cīvis, m., *citizen, fellow citizen*.
contentus, a, um, *contented*.
fēlīx, gen. **fēlīcis,** *fortunate, happy*.
inter, *among, between,* prep. with acc.
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual*.
puer, puerī, m., *boy*.
sub, *under,* prep. with abl.

EXERCISES.

165. 1. Fuisse, futūrus esse. 2. Sit, sītis. 3. Fuisset, fuissēmus. 4. Es, estō, suntō. 5. Essēs, essētis, essēmus. 6. Sīmus, essent, esse, futūrus. 7. Contentus fuisset, sit fēlīx, sint fēlīcēs. 8. Este, esset, estōte. 9. Fuissētis beātī, fuisset beātus. 10. Essem, fuissēs, sīs.

166. 1. Sint meī cīvēs incolumēs, sint beātī! 2. Fēlīcēs sīmus! 3. Sub hōc imperātōre contentī fuissēmus. 4. Lēgēs brevēs suntō! 5. Es bonus imperātor! 6. Estō fīrmus! 7. Este fortēs mīlitēs! 8. Hī puerī futūrī sunt adulēscentēs. 9. Inter nōs sit amīcitia perpetua! 10. Sine hīs labōribus mīlitēs fortiōrēs fuissent. 11. In aliō oppidō fēlīcior fuissēs.

167. 1. Let them be; I should have been; they would have been. 2. To have been; be thou; they shall be. 3. May he be; he would have been. 4. May there be friendship between you and me. 5. May we be happy. 6. Let this law be brief. 7. I should have been glad. 8. Under another leader the soldiers would have been braver.

LESSON XXVII.

FIRST (OR *ā*-) CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

Amō, *I love.*

Principal Parts.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus

168. **Indicative Mood.**

Present Tense.

singular.	plural.
amō, *I love,*	amāmus, *we love,*
amās, *you love,*	amātis, *you love,*
amat, *he loves;*	amant, *they love.*

Imperfect.

amābam, *I was loving, I loved,*	amābāmus, *we were loving, etc.,*
amābās, *you were loving, etc.,*	amābātis, *you were loving, etc.,*
amābat, *he was loving, etc.;*	amābant, *they were loving, etc.*

Future.

amābō, *I shall love,*	amābimus, *we shall love,*
amābis, *you will love,*	amābitis, *you will love,*
amābit, *he will love;*	amābunt, *they will love.*

Perfect.

amāvī, *I have loved, I loved,*	amāvimus, *we have loved, we loved,*
amāvistī, *you have loved, you loved,*	amāvistis, *you have loved, you loved,*
amāvit, *he has loved, he loved;*	amāvērunt, -ēre, *they have loved, they loved.*

Pluperfect.

amāveram, *I had loved,*	amāverāmus, *we had loved,*
amāverās, *you had loved,*	amāverātis, *you had loved,*
amāverat, *he had loved;*	amāverant, *they had loved.*

Future Perfect.

amāverō, *I shall have loved,*	amāverimus, *we shall have loved,*
amāveris, *you will have loved,*	amāveritis, *you will have loved,*
amāverit, *he will have loved;*	amāverint, *they will have loved.*

1. Verb Stems. Observe that the Present, Imperfect, and Future are formed by adding the proper endings to one and the same stem, **am-**. This is called the **Present Stem.** Similarly the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect are formed from the stem **amāv-**. This is called the **Perfect Stem.**

169. VOCABULARY.

animus, ī, m., *mind.*
Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus*, king of the Germans.
classis, is, f., *fleet.*
cōnsilium, ī (iī), n., *plan.*
ē, ex, *from*, *out of*, prep. with abl.; **ex** must be used before vowels or **h.**
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe.*
jam, adv., *already.*
jugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge* (of mountains).
lītus, oris, n., *shore.*
locus, ī, m., *place;* pl. **loca, ōrum**, n.
nāvis, is, f., *ship*, *boat.*
pars, partis, f., *part*, *side.*
saepe, adv., *often.*

EXERCISES.

170. 1. Laudābimus, laudāvistis. 2. Laudāverant, laudābat, laudābit. 3. Jūdicāvimus, jūdicāverimus, jūdicāverās. 4. Superābit, superābās. 5. Occupant, occupāvērunt. 6. Laudāvit, laudābāmus, laudāverant. 7. Occupābitis, occupābātis, occupābis. 8. Collocāvistī, collocāverās, collocāveris. 9. Superābunt, superāverimus, superāverō.

171. 1. Ariovistus castra minōra oppugnābat. 2. Hunc locum ex duābus partibus oppugnāvērunt. 3. Nāvēs et rēmigēs parābimus. 4. Omnia lītora classibus occupāvit. 5. Timor animōs omnium occupāverat. 6. In summō jugō montis duās legiōnēs collocāvimus. 7. Dē bellō vōs ipsī jūdicābitis. 8. Hās gentēs, mīlitēs, jam saepe superāvistis. 9. Legiōnēs in proeliō dīmicābant. 10. Quis hōc cōnsilium probābit? 11. Caesar plūrima jūmenta jam parāverat. 12. Hās quīnque legiōnēs in eō locō collocābimus. 13. Pācem et amīcitiam cum hīs cīvitātibus nōndum cōnfīrmāvimus.

172. 1. I have summoned you; I was summoning you. 2. You summoned me; we shall summon you; they had summoned you. 3. We praised him; they had praised him; I was praising him. 4. The soldiers will fight; they have fought; we have fought. 5. Caesar had got ready many ships. 6. He will station two legions in that place. 7. I have not yet approved these plans. 8. Who had approved those words?

173. **Gaul and its Divisions.**[1]

Gallia[2] est magna terra quae inter Rhēnum flūmen et Ōceanum jacet. Hūjus terrae sunt trēs partēs, quārum ūnam[3] incolunt[4] Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae, quī nostrā linguā[5] Gallī appellantur.[6] Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

---

[1] This and the sixteen following passages of connected discourse form a continuous narrative of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii, as detailed in full in Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic War*, Book I., chapters i.–xxix.

[2] In the passages of continuous narrative, the pupil will consult the General Vocabulary at the end of the book for the words that have not been given in previous lessons.

[3] **unam, aliam, tertiam**: understand *partem* with these words. [4] **incolunt**: *inhabit;* 3rd plu. pres. indic. [5] **nostra lingua**: *in our language; i.e.* in Latin. [6] **appellantur**: *are called;* 3rd plu. pres. indic. pass.



Roman Forum, or Public Square, in Caesar's Time.

BIOGRAPHICAL NOTE ON JULIUS CAESAR.

The Helvetian War, which is the subject of the connected reading in this and the following lessons, was a part of the first campaign of Julius Caesar during his governorship of Gaul. This account is simplified and greatly abbreviated from the one which he wrote in his own Commentaries.

That these Commentaries should have been read for centuries in the schools seems especially fitting, since they display the literary style, the military genius, the eloquence, and the forethought of the greatest personality of Roman history.

As an introduction to the story told in the following pages, a very brief account of Caesar's life is here given.

Born of an old patrician family, Gaius Julius Caesar entered at an early age the field of politics, which was considered the fitting activity of a young Roman of high birth. In spite of his aristocratic connection, he at once recognized the strength of the popular party, and allied himself with it. Immediately his exceptional ability showed itself, and we find him at the age of fifteen the holder of an important public office, and at twenty-two the winner of the civic crown, which was conferred for military distinction. Serving the State with great credit in various offices, and neglecting no opportunity to ingratiate himself with the people, he had reached the highest magistracy of the Roman State — the consulship — at the age of forty-two.

It was at this time that he fo the famous coalition (called the First Triumvirate) wit ıpey, who had won unbounded popularity by his military ıievements, and Cras-

sus, the richest man in Rome. Working in concert, these three were supreme. Through the influence of his powerful allies, Caesar was appointed governor of the Roman provinces of Gaul for five years, and, upon the expiration of his term, for a second period of five years. His Commentaries belong to this time, when perhaps his plans for becoming master of Rome were quietly forming themselves. During these years not only did he conquer Gaul, but he replenished his purse, and trained the army on whose efficiency he built his fortunes.

Before the ten years of his governorship had elapsed, the death of Crassus in Parthia brought about a breach with Pompey, which widened into civil war, and ended with Caesar's triumph over his rival at Pharsalus (48 B.C.) and his elevation to the supreme power at Rome.

In this office Caesar's greatest work was done. He established beneficent governments for the provinces, corrected the calendar, and instituted numerous much needed reforms. In the height of his power, at the age of fifty-seven, he was struck down by a band of conspirators — not, however, before he had firmly laid the foundation of that great Roman Empire which was to give the world for more than two centuries a better government than any considerable part of it had ever known.

LESSON XXVIII.

ACTIVE OF *amō* (Continued).

174. **Subjunctive.**

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
a**mem**, *may I love,*	a**mēmus**, *let us love,*
a**mēs**, *love, may you love,*	a**mētis**, *love, may you love,*
a**met**, *let him love, may he love;*	a**ment**, *let them love, may they love.*

Imperfect.

amā**rem**, *I should love,*	amā**rēmus**, *we should love,*
amā**rēs**, *you would love,*	amā**rētis**, *you would love,*
amā**ret**, *he would love;*	amā**rent**, *they would love.*

Perfect.

amāv**erim**	amāv**erīmus**
amāv**erīs**	amāv**erītis**
amāv**erit**	amāv**erint**

Pluperfect.

amāv**issem**, *I should have loved,*	amāv**issēmus**, *we should have loved,*
amāv**issēs**, *you would have loved,*	amāv**issētis**, *you would have loved,*
amāv**isset**, *he would have loved;*	amāv**issent**, *they would have loved.*

Imperative.

Pres.	am**ā**, *love thou;*	am**āte**, *love ye.*
Fut.	am**ātō**, *thou shalt love,*	am**ātōte**, *ye shall love.*
	am**ātō**, *he shall love;*	am**antō**, *they shall love.*

Infinitive.

Pres. am**āre**, *to love.*
Perf. amāv**isse**, *to have loved.*
Fut. amāt**ūrus esse**, *to be about to love.*

Participle.

Pres. am**āns**,[1] *loving.* (Gen. am**antis**)
Fut. amāt**ūrus**, *about to love.*

Gerund.

Gen. am**andī**, *of loving.*
Dat. am**andō**, *for loving.*
Acc. am**andum**, *loving.*
Abl. am**andō**, *by loving.*

Supine.

Acc. amāt**um**, *to love.*
Abl. amāt**ū**, *to love, be loved.*

---

[1] For declension of **amāns**, see § 91, **recēns**.

1. Verb Stems. Observe that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, Present Participle, and the Gerund are formed from the Present Stem. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, along with the Perfect Infinitive, are formed from the Perfect Stem. The Future Participle, Future Infinitive, and the Supine are formed from a third stem **amāt-**, known as the **Participial Stem.**

175. VOCABULARY.

arma, **ōrum**, n. pl., *arms.*
bellō,[1] *I make war, carry on war.*
cupidus, **a**, **um**, *fond, eager.*
hōra, **ae**, f., *hour.*
intrā, *within*, prep. with acc.
medius, **a**, **um**, *middle, middle of.*
multitūdō, **dinis**, f., *multitude.*
nunc, *now*, temporal adv.
patria, **ae**, f., *country, fatherland.*
pedes, **itis**, m., *foot-soldier;* in pl., *infantry.*
plānitiēs, **ēī**, f., *plain.*
temptō, 1, *I attempt, make trial of.*
vadum, **ī**, n., *ford.*

EXERCISES.

176. 1. Parā, parantō. 2. Parāvisse, parandī, parandō. 3. Bellāre, bellātūrus esse. 4. Temptēmus, temptāvissēmus. 5. Laudātō, laudāvisse, laudāvisset. 6. Laudātūrus, laudāns, laudent. 7. Laudandō, laudāret, laudā. 8. Dīmicandī, dīmicāvissent, dīmicent. 9. Dīmicāte, dīmicāns, dīmicāvisse.

177. 1. Patriam amēmus! 2. Hōc oppidum sine ūllō perīculō oppugnāvissēmus. 3. Arma, mīlitēs, parāte! 4. Caesar vadum hūjus flūminis temptāre parat. 5. In mediā plānitiē nunc dīmicātūrī sumus. 6. Helvētiī erant cupidī bellandī. 7. Intrā ūnam hōram classēs hostium superāvissēmus. 8. Cum magnā multitūdine peditum oppidum oppugnāre parābat. 9. Temptāte, mīlitēs, illum collem occupāre. 10. Hae duae cohortēs, victōriam spērantēs, ācriter pugnābant.

---

[1] Verbs of the First Conjugation are so regular that their Principal Parts are not given in full. They are indicated in the Vocabularies by the figure 1, and unless otherwise stated, their Principal Parts are regularly formed in **-ō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, precisely like **amō**.

178. 1. Let the soldiers contend; the soldiers would have contended. 2. To have contended; about to contend; by contending. 3. May he approve our words; he would have approved your words. 4. Who would have praised this man? 5. The soldiers try to seize that hill. 6. Praise all these soldiers. 7. We are about to attack another town. 8. All the Gauls are fond of fighting.



LEGIONARY SOLDIERS.

LESSON XXIX.

FIRST (OR *ā*-) CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

Amor, *I am loved.*

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
Principal Parts. —	**amor**	**amārī**	**amātus sum**

179. **Indicative Mood.**

Present Tense.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amor	**amāmur**
amāris	**amāminī**
amātur	**amantur**

Imperfect.

I was loved.

amābar	**amābāmur**
amābāris, *or* **-re**	**amābāminī**
amābātur	**amābantur**

Future.

I shall be loved.

amābor	**amābimur**
amāberis, *or* **-re**	**amābiminī**
amābitur	**amābuntur**

Perfect.

I have been loved or *I was loved.*

amātus (-a, -um) sum	**amātī (-ae, -a) sumus**
amātus es	**amātī estis**
amātus est	**amātī sunt**

Pluperfect.

I had been loved.

amātus eram	**amātī erāmus**
amātus erās	**amātī erātis**
amātus erat	**amātī erant**

Future Perfect.

I shall have been loved.

amātus erō	**amātī erimus**
amātus eris	**amātī eritis**
amātus erit	**amātī erunt**

1. Verb Stems. Observe that the Present, Imperfect, and Future belong to the Present Stem, the remaining tenses to the Participial Stem.

180. VOCABULARY.

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival.*
centum, indecl., *hundred.*
exspectō, 1, *I expect, await.*
fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
funditor, tōris, m., *slinger.*
postrīdiē, adv., *on the next day.*
postulō, 1, *I demand.*
vulnerō, *I wound.*

EXERCISES.

181. 1. Laudābor, laudāminī, laudābuntur. 2. Vocātus sum, vocātī erant. 3. Vulnerantur, vulnerābāmur. 4. Exspectāmur, exspectābantur. 5. Culpātī erāmus, culpātī erunt. 6. Exspectābitur, exspectāta est, exspectātae erant. 7. Laudātī estis, laudāberis, laudābiminī. 8. Superātī sumus, superantur, superābor. 9. Vulnerātur, vulnerātus sum, vulnerābimur.

182. 1. Reliqua pars exercitūs frūstrā exspectābātur. 2. Hī fortēs mīlitēs superātī sunt. 3. Amīcitia cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōnfīrmāta[1] erat. 4. Centum funditōrēs vulnerātī sunt. 5. Frūmentum postulātur. 6. Ejus adventus postrīdiē nūntiātus est. 7. Nāvēs et rēmigēs parābuntur. 8. Hae cōpiae armātae[1] sunt. 9. Haec oppida oppugnāta[1] erant. 10. Haec victōria equitum nostrōrum jam nūntiāta erat. 11. Cōpiae et frūmentum frūstrā parābantur. 12. Omnēs ferācēs agrī Gallōrum jam vāstātī erant. 13. Illae gentēs fīnitimae superātae erunt.

183. 1. We shall be praised; we have been praised; we had been praised. 2. She was praised; she will be praised; she had been praised. 3. You are expected; you will be

---

[1] Observe that in the compound tenses of the Passive the Participle agrees in Gender and Number with its subject, precisely like an adjective.

expected; they will be expected. 4. Who was being praised? 5. All these towns will be attacked. 6. The Gauls had often been overcome. 7. These six ships have been got ready. 8. On the following day many soldiers were wounded.

184. Narrow Boundaries of the Helvetii.

Helvētiī quoque erant Celtae. Eōrum fīnēs fuērunt angustī. Undique locī nātūrā continēbantur;[1] ūnā ex parte[2] flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō[3] atque altissimō; alterā ex parte Monte Jūrā altissimō,[4] quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā,[5] Lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō.

---

1 **continebantur**: *were hemmed in;* 3rd plu. imperfect indic. pass. 2 **una ex parte, altera ex parte**: *on one side, on the other side;* literally, *from one side, from the other side.* 3 **latissimo, altissimo**: *very broad, very deep;* a common force of the superlative. 4 **altissimo**: *very high.* 5 **tertia**: understand **ex parte.**

LESSON XXX.

PASSIVE OF *amō* (Continued).

185. **Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

May I be loved, let him be loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amer	amēmur
amēris, *or* -re	amēminī
amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, he would be loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, *or* -re	amārēminī
amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amātus sim	amātī sīmus
amātus sīs	amātī sītis
amātus sit	amātī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amātus essem	amātī essēmus
amātus essēs	amātī essētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

Imperative.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	amāre, *be thou loved;*	amāminī, *be ye loved.*
Fut.	amātor, *thou shalt be loved,*	
	amātor, *he shall be loved;*	amantor, *they shall be loved.*

Infinitive.

Pres. amārī, *to be loved.*

Perf. amātus esse, *to have been loved.*

Fut. amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

Participle.

Perf. amātus, *loved, having been loved.*

Gerundive amandus, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

1. Verb Stems. Observe that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, and the Gerundive belong to the Present Stem, the remaining forms to the Participial Stem. The Perfect Stem is not represented in the Passive.

186. VOCABULARY.

castellum, ī, n., *fort.*
convocō, 1, *I call together.*
dīligentia, **ae**, f., *diligence.*
equus, **ī**, m., *horse.*
excitō, 1, *I stir up, rouse.*
exīstimō, 1, *I think, consider.*
exitium, **ī** (**iī**), n., *destruction.*
expugnō, 1, *I take by storm.*
nōn, *not.*
statim, *at once, immediately.*
templum, **ī**, n., *temple.*
vix, *scarcely, with difficulty.*

EXERCISES.

187. 1. Laudētur, laudēmur, culpentur. 2. Laudātus esset, laudātī essēmus. 3. Excitārī, excitātus esse, superandus. 4. Convocātus, culpātus. 5. Superātī essēmus, culpātī essent. 6. Parārī, parandus. 7. Collis occupētur, collis occupātus esset. 8. Vocātus essem, vocātī essētis, vocāta esset. 9. Vocentur, vocātus, vocātus esse. 10. Exīstimārī, exīstimandus, exīstimētur.

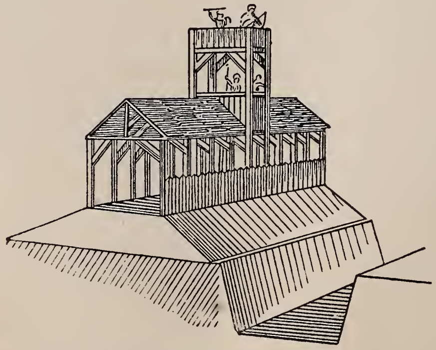
188. 1. Arma et equī statim parentur. 2. Magnae classēs summā dīligentiā parandae sunt. 3. Hī hostēs nōn ūnā legiōne superātī essent. 4. Sine nōbīs hōc castellum vix expugnātum esset. 5. Senātus in hōc templum convocētur. 6. Sine tē hae magnae cōpiae nōn parātae essent. 7. Dīligentia mīlitum nostrōrum laudētur. 8. Hī mīlitēs vix laudātī essent. 9. Sine auxiliō nostrō facile superātī essētis. 10. Omnēs portae sunt oppugnandae. 11. Maximus numerus nāvium statim parētur. 12. Hae legiōnēs in eō locō collocandae sunt. 13. Exitium hūjus exercitūs vītandum est.

189. 1. Let them be called together; they would have been called together. 2. The senate must be (= is to be) called together at once. 3. We should easily have been overcome.

4. You would scarcely have been praised. 5. These towns would have been taken by storm most easily. 6. Your words would not have been approved. 7. The onset of the enemy must be retarded.

REVIEW.

190. 1. Maximī exercitūs summā dīligentiā parātī sunt. 2. Haec castella hostium jam expugnāta erant. 3. Haec oppida statim oppugnābuntur. 4. Adventus lēgātōrum nūntiābitur. 5. Timor animōs peditum ignāvōrum occupāverat. 6. Hae gentēs, mīlitēs, jam saepe superātae sunt. 7. Cohortēs proeliō dīmicābunt. 8. Quis fuit dux hārum cōpiārum? 9. Caesar prīncipēs cūjusque cīvitātis ad sē vocāvit. 10. Hae pulchrae urbēs nōs dēlectant. 11. Adventum tuum exspectābō. 12. Arma et frūmentum parābantur. 13. Amicī nostrī sunt vocandī.



Wall and Ditch (murus fossaque).

LESSON XXXI.

SECOND (OR *ē*-) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Moneō, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitus

191. **Indicative Mood.**

PRESENT TENSE. *I advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

IMPERFECT. *I was advising*, or *I advised.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

FUTURE. *I shall advise.*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

PERFECT. *I have advised*, or *I advised.*

monuī	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt, *or* ēre

PLUPERFECT. *I had advised.*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have advised.*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

192. **Subjunctive.**

PRESENT. *May I advise, let him advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

IMPERFECT. *I should advise, he would advise.*

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis
monuerit	monuerint

PLUPERFECT. *I should have advised, he would have advised.*

monuissem	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

Imperative.

Pres.	monē, *advise thou;*	monēte, *advise ye.*
Fut.	monētō, *thou shalt advise,*	monētōte, *ye shall advise.*
	monētō, *he shall advise;*	monentō, *they shall advise.*

Infinitive.

Pres. monēre, *to advise.*
Perf. monuisse, *to have advised.*
Fut. monitūrus esse, *to be about to advise.*

Participle.

Pres. monēns, *advising.* (Gen. monentis.)
Fut. monitūrus, *about to advise.*

Gerund.

Gen. monendī, *of advising.*
Dat. monendō, *for advising.*
Acc. monendum, *advising.*
Abl. monendō, *by advising.*

Supine.

Acc. monitum, *to advise.*
Abl. monitū, *to advise, be advised.*

1. Verb Stems. The Present, Perfect, and Participial Stems include the same moods and tenses in the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations as in the First.

193. VOCABULARY.

angustus, a, um, *narrow.*
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus, *I owe;* with an infinitive, *I ought.*
deus, ī, m., *god.*
equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*
fīnis, is, m., *end, boundary;* in pl., *territory.*
habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *I have, possess.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus,[1] *I remain.*
mīlitāris, e, *military.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *I move.*
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *I keep off, keep away* (tr.).
signum, ī, n., *sign, standard.*
sustineō, ēre, sustinuī, *I withstand.*
timeō, ēre, uī, *I fear.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *I see.*

EXERCISES.

194. 1. Habēbimus, habuimus, habeāmus. 2. Sustinuistis, sustinuerat. 3. Timēbat, timēbit, timeant. 4. Vīdit, vīderat. 5. Mānsistī, mānserās, mānseris. 6. Mānsit, manēmus, mānsisse. 7. Prohibuit, prohibuistis, prohibēbit, prohibeāmus. 8. Habē, habitūrus, habeat. 9. Vīdistī, vīderāmus, vīdimus, vīdērunt.

195. 1. Hae cīvitātēs in amīcitiā Haeduōrum mānserant. 2. Helvētiī fīnēs angustōs habēbant. 3. Hostēs signa mīlitāria jam vīderant. 4. Impetum equitātūs nostrī fortiter sustinuērunt. 5. Helvētiī ex eō locō castra movent. 6. Quis eōs timēbit? 7. Hostēs prohibēre dēbēmus. 8. Deī hostēs prohibeant! 9. Hostēs prohibēte! 10. Magnum numerum equitum et peditum habēbimus. 11. In hōc oppidō manēbimus. 12. Quis locum videt quem hostēs occupāvērunt? 13. Eōsdem amīcōs habēmus et habuimus.

---

[1] See p. 59, footnote.

196. 1. We have seen you; we shall see you; he had seen you. 2. We were fearing; you had feared; he will fear. 3. To have feared, to have seen; fearing, seeing. 4. May he have; we should have had; he shall have. 5. You ought to remain in this place. 6. We had seen the standards of the enemy. 7. We should easily have kept the enemy away.

197. **The Helvetii Decide to Emigrate.**

Itaque ē fīnibus suīs ēgredī[1] et aliās sēdēs petere[1] cōnstituērunt.[2] Per biennium jūmenta, carrōs, frūmentum parābant; in tertium annum[3] profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.[4] Ubi jam parātī fuērunt, oppida sua omnia, quadringentōs vīcōs, reliquaque[5] prīvāta aedificia incendunt.[6]

---

[1] **egredī**, **petere**: *to go out*, *to seek*; pres. infs., dependent on *constituerunt*. [2] **constituerunt**: *they resolved*; 3rd plu. perf. indic. [3] **in tertium annum**: *for the third year*. [4] **confirmant**: *they set*; present with the force of the perfect, a very common usage in Latin. It is called the Historical Present. [5] **reliquaque**: composed of *reliqua* and *-que* ('and'), which is always thus attached to the word which it connects. Such words are called enclitics. [6] **incendunt**: *they set fire to*; 3rd plu. pres. indic.

LESSON XXXII.

SECOND (OR *ē*-) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Moneor, *I am advised.*

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
Principal Parts.—	moneor	monērī	monitus sum

198. **Indicative Mood.**

Present Tense.

I am advised.

Singular.	Plural.
moneor	monēmur
monēris	monēminī
monētur	monentur

Imperfect.

I was advised.

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris, *or* -re	monēbāminī
monēbātur	monēbantur

Future.

I shall be advised.

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis, *or* -re	monēbiminī
monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect.

I have been advised, I was advised.

monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

Pluperfect.

I had been advised.

monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

Future Perfect.

I shall have been advised.

monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

199. **Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

May I be advised, let him be advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mon**ear**	mon**eāmur**
mon**eāris**, *or* **-re**	mon**eāminī**
mon**eātur**	mon**eantur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be advised, he would be advised.

mon**ērer**	mon**ērēmur**
mon**ērēris**, *or* **-re**	mon**ērēminī**
mon**ērētur**	mon**ērentur**

PERFECT.

monitus **sim**	monitī **sīmus**
monitus **sīs**	monitī **sītis**
monitus **sit**	monitī **sint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been advised, he would have been advised.

monitus **essem**	monitī **essēmus**
monitus **essēs**	monitī **essētis**
monitus **esset**	monitī **essent**

Imperative.

Pres. mon**ēre**, *be thou advised;* mon**ēminī**, *be ye advised.*

Fut. mon**ētor**, *thou shalt be advised,*

mon**ētor**, *he shall be advised;* mon**entor**, *they shall be advised.*

Infinitive.

Pres. mon**ērī**, *to be advised.*

Perf. monitus **esse**, *to have been advised.*

Fut. monitum **īrī**, *to be about to be advised.*

Participle.

Perf. monitus, *advised, having been advised.*

Gerundive mon**endus**, *to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

200. VOCABULARY.

admodum, *quite, very much.*
aequus, a, um, *level.*
apertus, a, um, *open.*
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *I increase.*
barbarus, a, um, *barbarian;* as noun, m., *a barbarian.*
celeriter, *quickly.*
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *I fill up.*
contineō, ēre, uī, *I confine.*
imber, imbris, m., *rainstorm.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *I move; touch, affect.*
perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *I terrify.*
suspīciō, ōnis, f., *suspicion.*
teneō, ēre, uī, *I hold.*
vetus, gen. **veteris**, *old.*
videor, ērī, vīsus sum (passive of **videō**), *be seen; seem.*

EXERCISES.

201. 1. Movētur, movēbantur. 2. Perterrentur, perterrēbantur, perterritī erant. 3. Contineātur, continēbuntur. 4. Vidērī, vīsus esse, videndus. 5. Augērī, auctus esse. 6. Vīsus est, vīsae erant, vīsī sunt. 7. Timēre videntur, timēre vidēbātur, timēre vīsa est. 8. Prohibēbāmur, prohibitī sumus, prohibita erat. 9. Prohibeantur, prohibērī.

202. 1. Mīlitēs in castrīs imbribus continēbantur. 2. Barbarī admodum perterritī sunt. 3. Equitēs hostium in aequō locō vīsī sunt. 4. Memoriā nostrae veteris amīcitiae movēbar. 5. Suspīciōnēs Gallōrum augēbantur. 6. Agrī nostrī vāstārī nōn dēbent. 7. Equitēs nostrī illud oppidum expugnāvisse videntur. 8. Fossae celeriter complēbuntur. 9. Loca aperta tenēbantur. 10. Timōrēs nostrī auctī sunt.

203. 1. We seem; he seemed; you had seemed. 2. They will be terrified; we had been terrified. 3. Your suspicions were increased. 4. The camp had been moved. 5. Our soldiers seem to have filled up the trench of the enemy. 6. The onset of the barbarians will be bravely withstood. 7. The Gauls must be kept away. 8. These trenches would have been quickly filled up.

LESSON XXXIII.

THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

Regō, *I rule.*

	Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
Principal Parts. —	**regō**	**regere**	**rēxī**	**rēctus**

204. **Indicative Mood.**

Present Tense.

singular.	*I rule.*	plural.
regō		**regimus**
regis		**regitis**
regit		**regunt**

Imperfect.

I was ruling, or *I ruled.*

regēbam	**regēbāmus**
regēbās	**regēbātis**
regēbat	**regēbant**

Future.

I shall rule.

regam	**regēmus**
regēs	**regētis**
reget	**regent**

Perfect.

I have ruled, or *I ruled.*

rēxī	**rēximus**
rēxistī	**rēxistis**
rēxit	**rēxērunt**, or **-ēre**

Pluperfect.

I had ruled.

rēxeram	**rēxerāmus**
rēxerās	**rēxerātis**
rēxerat	**rēxerant**

Future Perfect.

I shall have ruled.

rēxerō	**rēxerimus**
rēxeris	**rēxeritis**
rēxerit	**rēxerint**

205. **Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

May I rule, let him rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regam	regāmus
regās	regātis
regat	regant

IMPERFECT.

I should rule, he would rule.

regerem	regerēmus
regerēs	regerētis
regeret	regerent

PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerīmus
rēxerīs	rēxerītis
rēxerit	rēxerint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have ruled, he would have ruled.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis
rēxisset	rēxissent

Imperative.

Pres.	**rege**, *rule thou;*	**regite**, *rule ye.*
Fut.	**regitō**, *thou shalt rule,*	**regitōte**, *ye shall rule.*
	regitō, *he shall rule;*	**reguntō**, *they shall rule.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **regere**, *to rule.*
Perf. **rēxisse**, *to have ruled.*
Fut. **rēctūrus esse**, *to be about to rule.*

Participle.

Pres. **regēns**, *ruling.* (Gen. **regentis.**)
Fut. **rēctūrus**, *about to rule.*

Gerund.

Gen. **regendī**, *of ruling.*
Dat. **regendō**, *for ruling.*
Acc. **regendum**, *ruling.*
Abl. **regendō**, *by ruling.*

Supine.

Acc. **rēctum**, *to rule.*
Abl. **rēctū**, *to rule, be ruled.*

1. VERB STEMS. See § 168, 1; 174, 1.

206. VOCABULARY.

auxilia, ōrum, n. pl., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*
citerior, ius, adj., *nearer, hither.*
committō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I bring together;* with **proelium**, *to join battle.*
cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *I decide, determine.*
contendō, ere, tendī, tentum,[1] *I hurry, hasten.*
dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus, *I defend.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *I carry on, perform;* with **bellum**, *to wage.*
hīc, *here, at this place.*
Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
in, *into;* prep. with acc.
in, *on, in*, prep. with abl. of place where.
īnstruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus, *I draw up, arrange.*
iter, itineris, n., *journey, march.*
litterae, ārum, f., *a letter.*
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I send.*
omnīnō, adv., *altogether; in all.*
pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *I put, place, establish.*
praesidium, ī (iī), n., *garrison.*
prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead back.*
relinquō, ere, līquī, līctus, *I leave, leave behind.*

EXERCISES.

207. 1. Mittēbat, mittent. 2. Mīsit, mīserātis, mīsērunt. 3. Relīquisset, relīquisse, relinquēns. 4. Īnstrūxerat, īnstrūxerimus. 5. Posuimus, posuerat, pōnant. 6. Relinquēmus, relīquimus, relīquisset. 7. Dēfendat, dēfendere, dēfendite. 8. Dēfendunt, dēfendent, dēfendērunt. 9. Mīsistī, mittat.

208. 1. Litterās in Hispāniam Citeriōrem[2] mīsit. 2. In hanc prōvinciam magnīs itineribus contendēbat. 3. Illās prōvinciās audācter dēfendite. 4. Galba legiōnēs in castra redūxerat. 5. Caesar aciem in mediō colle īnstrūxit. 6. Bellum gerere cōnstituimus. 7. Proelium committāmus. 8. Partem auxiliōrum ibi relīquerat. 9. Hīc praesidium posuērunt. 10. Hās prōvinciās fortiter dēfendēmus. 11. Quis hōs lēgātōs ad senātum mīsit? 12. Cōpiās in vīcum proximum statim

[1] In the case of intransitive verbs, the Perfect Passive Participle is given in the neuter form.
[2] That is, Spain north of the river Ebro.

redūcēmus. 13. Amīcōs suōs relinquere cōnstituit. 14. Cum multīs gentibus prōvinciae citeriōris bellum gerētis.

209. 1. We defended the city; they had defended the city; they will defend the city. 2. I sent a letter; we shall send a letter; they had sent a letter. 3. Let us defend; we should have defended; let him defend. 4. To send; to have sent. 5. I shall leave a garrison in this place. 6. Caesar sent two legions into Spain. 7. He had decided to defend the camp. 8. We waged war in Gaul.

210. The Helvetii Resolve to Go by Way of the Roman Province.

Erant omnīnō itinera[1] duo, quibus domō[2] ēgredī[3] poterant[4]; ūnum[5] per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter Montem Jūram et Flūmen Rhodanum, vix[6] quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; alterum[7] per prōvinciam nostram,[8] multō facilius et expedītius.[9] Hōc itinere ēgredī cōnstituērunt[10] atque ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs cōnvēnērunt.[11]

---

[1] **itinera**: *routes;* nom. plu. of *iter, itineris.* [2] **domo**: *from home.* [3] **egredi**: *to go out,* as in § 197. [4] **poterant**: *were able*; 3rd plu. imperfect indic. [5] **unum**: understand *iter.* [6] **vix qua singuli carri ducerentur**: *where carts could scarcely be drawn one by one.* [7] **alterum**: understand *iter.* [8] **provinciam nostram**: *our province* was the name given to that part of Gaul which had been subjugated by the Romans and erected into a province in 120 B.C. It was in the southeastern part of modern France. [9] **multo facilius et expeditius**: *much easier and more convenient;* literally, *easier and more convenient by much: facilius* and *expeditius* are the nom. sing. neut. of the comparative, limiting *iter* understood. [10] **constituerunt**: *they resolved;* as in § 197. [11] **convenerunt**: *they assembled;* 3rd plu. perf. indic.

LESSON XXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Regor, *I am ruled.*

	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
PRINCIPAL PARTS.—	**regor**	**regī**	**rēctus sum**

211. **Indicative Mood.**

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regor	**regimur**
regeris	**regiminī**
regitur	**reguntur**

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

regēbar	**regēbāmur**
regēbāris, *or* **-re**	**regēbāminī**
regēbātur	**regēbantur**

FUTURE.

I shall be ruled.

regar	**regēmur**
regēris, *or* **-re**	**regēminī**
regētur	**regentur**

PERFECT.

I have been ruled, or *I was ruled.*

rēctus sum	**rēctī sumus**
rēctus es	**rēctī estis**
rēctus est	**rēctī sunt**

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rēctus eram	**rēctī erāmus**
rēctus erās	**rēctī erātis**
rēctus erat	**rēctī erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been ruled.

rēctus erō	**rēctī erimus**
rēctus eris	**rēctī eritis**
rēctus erit	**rēctī erunt**

212. **Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

May I be ruled, let him be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regar	**regāmur**
regāris, *or* **-re**	**regāminī**
regātur	**regantur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be ruled, he would be ruled.

regerer	**regerēmur**
regerēris, *or* **-re**	**regerēminī**
regerētur	**regerentur**

PERFECT.

rēctus **sim**	rēctī **sīmus**
rēctus **sīs**	rēctī **sītis**
rēctus **sit**	rēctī **sint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēctus **essem**	rēctī **essēmus**
rēctus **essēs**	rēctī **essētis**
rēctus **esset**	rēctī **essent**

Imperative.

Pres.	**regere**, *be thou ruled;*	**regiminī**, *be ye ruled.*
Fut.	**regitor**, *thou shalt be ruled,*	
	regitor, *he shall be ruled;*	**reguntor**, *they shall be ruled.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **regī**, *to be ruled.*

Perf. **rēctus esse**, *to have been ruled.*

Fut. **rēctum īrī**, *to be about to be ruled.*

Participle.

Perf. **rēctus**, *ruled, having been ruled.*

Gerundive **regendus**, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*

213. VOCABULARY.

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *I force, compel.*
contrā, *against,* prep. with acc.
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead away.*
ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead.*
expedītus, a, um, *unencumbered, light-armed.*
intereā, adv., *in the meanwhile.*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *I fit out.*
longus, a, um, *long;* **nāvis longa,** *war-ship.*
mūnītiō, ōnis, f., *fortification.*
quā, *where.*
superior, ius, *higher.*
trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *I hand over.*
tum, *then, at that time.*
ulterior, ius, *farther.*

EXERCISES.

214. 1. Dēdūcitur, dēductī erant. 2. Cōgimur, coāctī sumus. 3. Dūcantur, ductī essent, ductus esse. 4. Mittēmur, mittentur, missī sumus. 5. Relinquēbāmur, relinquēbātur, relinquētur. 6. Bellum gerētur, bellum gerātur, bellum gestum est, bellum gestum esset. 7. Dūcendus, dūcī.

215. 1. Intereā castella quoque posita sunt. 2. Duae cohortēs ad aliam partem mūnītiōnum dēdūcuntur. 3. Venetī hās nāvēs relinquere cōguntur. 4. Trēs legiōnēs in Galliam Ulteriōrem[1] missae sunt, quā bellum tum gerēbātur. 5. Duae legiōnēs expedītae contrā hostēs dūcentur. 6. Nāvēs longae omnibus rēbus īnstrūctae erant. 7. In locīs superiōribus proelium commissum est.

216. 1. Hostages had been sent; hostages will be sent; hostages have been sent. 2. We shall be defended; he had been defended; she had been defended. 3. These legions have been led to the other camp. 4. A garrison has been left here. 5. You would have been compelled to remain. 6. Many wars will be waged. 7. Two legions were sent against the enemy. 8. These ships will be fitted out with all things.

---

[1] That is, Gaul beyond the Alps.

LESSON XXXV.

FOURTH (OR *ī*-) CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

Audiō, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus

217. **Indicative Mood.**

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or *I heard.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

FUTURE.

I shall hear.

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

PERFECT.

I have heard, or *I heard.*

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt, *or* -ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have heard.

audīverō	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

218. **Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

May I hear, let him hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

IMPERFECT.

I should hear, he would hear.

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

PERFECT.

audīverim	audīverīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis
audīverit	audīverint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have heard, he would have heard.

audīvissem	audīvissēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis
audīvisset	audīvissent

Imperative.

Pres.	**audī**, *hear thou;*	**audīte**, *hear ye.*
Fut.	**audītō**, *thou shalt hear,*	**audītōte**, *ye shall hear.*
	audītō, *he shall hear;*	**audiuntō**, *they shall hear.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **audīre**, *to hear.*
Perf. **audīvisse**, *to have heard.*
Fut. **audītūrus esse**, *to be about to hear.*

Participle.

Pres. **audiēns**, *hearing.* (Gen. **audientis.**)
Fut. **audītūrus**, *about to hear.*

Gerund.

Gen. **audiendī**, *of hearing.*
Dat. **audiendō**, *for hearing.*
Acc. **audiendum**, *hearing.*
Abl. **audiendō**, *by hearing.*

Supine.

Acc. **audītum**, *to hear.*
Abl. **audītū**, *to hear, be heard.*

1. VERB STEMS. See § 168, 1; 174, 1.

219. VOCABULARY.

agmen, **minis**, n., *army* (on the march); *column*.
anteā, *previously*, *before*.
conveniō, **īre**, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *come together*.
eōdem, adv., *to the same place*.
fāma, **ae**, f., *report*.
ferē, *almost*, *about*, *practically*.
impediō, **īre**, **īvī** (**iī**), **ītus**, *I impede*, *hinder*.
mora, **ae**, f., *delay*.
mūniō, **īre**, **īvī**, **ītus**, *I fortify*.
nūntius, **ī** (**iī**), m., *messenger*.
occāsiō, **ōnis**, f., *occasion*, *opportunity*.
posteā, *afterwards*.
reperiō, **īre**, **repperī**, **repertus**, *I discover*.
undique, adv., *from all parts* or *sides*.
veniō, **īre**, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *I come*.

EXERCISES.

220. 1. Vēnerat, veniet, veniat. 2. Repperimus, reppererāmus. 3. Mūnīvērunt, mūnient, mūnīvimus. 4. Convēnisse, impedītūrus esse. 5. Mūniendō, mūnīvissent. 6. Venīre, veniendī, vēnissem. 7. Veniētis, vēnērunt, veniēbat. 8. Veniāmus, venīte, vēnerās. 9. Mūniēbātis, mūnīvit, mūnīvisse.

221. 1. Caesar reliquās cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābat. 2. Lēgātī ferē tōtīus Galliae undique conveniunt. 3. Eōdem convēnimus. 4. Hōs nūntiōs audiāmus. 5. Haec castra, mīlitēs, sine morā mūnīte. 6. Hanc fāmam anteā audīverāmus. 7. Equitātus noster agmen hostium impediet. 8. Nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus. 9. Complūrēs nūntiī vēnērunt. 10. Illum altum collem mūniēbātis. 11. Nōs omnēs eōdem conveniāmus. 12. Tālem occāsiōnem nōn facile repperissēmus. 13. Reliquās legiōnēs, quae impedītae erant, exspectābāmus.

222. 1. We were fortifying; we have fortified; they will fortify. 2. They were assembling; they have assembled; they would have assembled. 3. He came; he will have come; let him come. 4. Fortify this camp, soldiers![1]

[1] The Vocative ordinarily stands second in the sentence.

5. The enemy hindered the march of our army![1] 6. The Germans assembled on all sides from the forests. 7. We have heard the report of that battle. 8. I afterwards discovered these things.

223. Caesar Hurries to the Scene of Action.

Ubi Caesar haec[2] audīvit, mātūrāvit ab urbe proficīscī[3] et maximīs itineribus[4] in Galliam Ulteriōrem[5] contendit et ad Genavam[6] pervēnit. Prōvinciae tōtī maximum numerum mīlitum imperat[7] (erat omnīnō in Galliā Ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem, quī erat ad Genavam,[8] jubet rescindī. Ad eum Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūjus lēgātiōnis[9] Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant.

---

[1] Use **agmen, minis,** *n.* [2] **haec**: *these things;* acc. plu. neut. [3] **proficisci**: *to set out;* pres. inf. [4] **maximis itineribus**: *by forced stages;* literally, *by the greatest journeys.* [5] **Galliam Ulteriorem**: *Farther Gaul; i.e.* Gaul beyond the Alps. [6] **ad Genavam**: *to the vicinity of Geneva.* [7] **provinciae toti imperat**: *he levied on the whole province;* literally, *to the whole province.* [8] **ad Genavam**: *near Geneva.* [9] **cujus legationis**: *on which legation;* literally, *of which, etc.*

LESSON XXXVI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, *I am heard.*

	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
PRINCIPAL PARTS. —	**audior**	**audīrī**	**audītus sum**

224. **Indicative Mood.**

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audior	**audīmur**
audīris	**audīminī**
audītur	**audiuntur**

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbar	**audiēbāmur**
audiēbāris, *or* **-re**	**audiēbāminī**
audiēbātur	**audiēbantur**

FUTURE.

I shall be heard.

audiar	**audiēmur**
audiēris, *or* **-re**	**audiēminī**
audiētur	**audientur**

PERFECT.

I have been heard, or *I was heard.*

audītus **sum**	audītī **sumus**
audītus **es**	audītī **estis**
audītus **est**	audītī **sunt**

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

audītus **eram**	audītī **erāmus**
audītus **erās**	audītī **erātis**
audītus **erat**	audītī **erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been heard.

audītus **erō**	audītī **erimus**
audītus **eris**	audītī **eritis**
audītus **erit**	audītī **erunt**

225. **Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiar	**audiāmur**
audiāris, *or* **-re**	**audiāminī**
audiātur	**audiantur**

IMPERFECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

audīrer	**audīrēmur**
audīrēris, *or* **-re**	**audīrēminī**
audīrētur	**audīrentur**

PERFECT.

audītus sim	**audītī sīmus**
audītus sīs	**audītī sītis**
audītus sit	**audītī sint**

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

audītus essem	**audītī essēmus**
audītus essēs	**audītī essētis**
audītus esset	**audītī essent**

Imperative.

Pres.	**audīre**, *be thou heard;*	**audīminī**, *be ye heard.*
Fut.	**audītor**, *thou shalt be heard,*	
	audītor, *he shall be heard;*	**audiuntor**, *they shall be heard.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **audīrī**, *to be heard.*

Perf. **audītus esse**, *to have been heard.*

Fut. **audītum īrī**, *to be about to be heard.*

Participle.

Perf. **audītus**, *heard, having been heard.*

Gerundive **audiendus**, *to be heard, deserving to be heard.*

226. VOCABULARY.

angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *a narrow pass.*
aqua, ae, f., *water.*
captīvus, ī, m., *captive.*
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *I surround.*
extrā, *outside*, *beyond*, prep. with acc.
idōneus, a, um, *suitable.*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *I find, come upon.*
nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*
nihil, indecl. n., *nothing.*
opus, operis, n., *work*, *fortification.*
paene, *almost*, *nearly.*
poena, ae, f., *punishment.*
prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *I run forward.*
regiō, ōnis, f., *region.*
simul, *together, at the same time.*
temere, *rashly.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice*, *word.*

EXERCISES.

227. 1. Invenītur, inventus erat. 2. Impedīmur, impediēbātur, impedīrī. 3. Impedītus, impedītī erāmus. 4. Inventus esse, inveniendus. 5. Inveniētur, inventī erunt, inventus esset. 6. Urbs mūniētur, urbs mūnīta erat, urbs mūnītur. 7. Urbēs mūniēbantur, urbēs mūnītae sunt, urbēs mūniantur. 8. Circumvenīmur, circumventus est, circumventus esset, circumveniendus. 9. Reperiētur, repertus esse, repertus, repertī sunt.

228. 1. Locus idōneus, nātūrā mūnītus, repertus est. 2. Nihil dē poenā captīvōrum audītum erat. 3. Peditēs nostrī altitūdine aquae impediēbantur. 4. Angustiīs impediēmur. 5. Castra magnīs operibus mūnīta sunt. 6. Vōcēs mīlitum simul audiēbantur. 7. Magna cōpia frūmentī in hīs regiōnibus inventa est. 8. Ūna cohors, quae temere extrā aciem prōcucurrerat, paene circumventa est. 9. Nihil reperiētur. 10. Castra majōra mūnienda sunt. 11. Altae arborēs in hāc silvā inventae sunt. 12. Illud oppidum altā fossā circumventum est. 13. Multae vōcēs in castrīs audītae sunt.

229. 1. We were surrounded; they had been surrounded; they will be surrounded. 2. He was heard; we had been heard; she will be heard. 3. Let him be heard; they would have been heard; to be heard. 4. These captives were surrounded with two cohorts of soldiers. 5. Nothing has been discovered. 6. No other voice will be heard. 7. The larger camp ought to be fortified.



Cavalry (equites).

LESSON XXXVII.

VERBS IN *-iō* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

230. 1. Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation take the endings of the Fourth Conjugation, wherever the latter endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System (§ 168, 1; § 174, 1).

231. ACTIVE VOICE. — ***Capiō***, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
capiō,	capere,	cēpī,	captus.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capiō, capis, capit;	capimus, capitis, capiunt.

IMPERFECT.

capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;	capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.

FUTURE.

capiam, -iēs, -iet;	capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.

PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -it;	cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, *or* -ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

cēperam, -erās, -erat;	cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēperō, -eris, -erit;	cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capiam, -iās, -iat;	capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.

IMPERFECT.

caperem, -erēs, -eret;	caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.

PERFECT.

cēperim, -erīs, -erit;	cēperīmus, -erītis, -erint.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissem, -issēs, -isset;	cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

Imperative.

Pres.	cape;	capite.
Fut.	capitō,	capitōte.
	capitō;	capiuntō.

Infinitive.		Participle.	
Pres.	capere.	*Pres.*	capiēns.
Perf.	cēpisse.		
Fut.	captūrus esse.	*Fut.*	captūrus.

Gerund.		Supine.	
Gen.	capiendī.		
Dat.	capiendō.		
Acc.	capiendum.	*Acc.*	captum.
Abl.	capiendō.	*Abl.*	captū.

232. PASSIVE VOICE. — ***Capior***, *I am taken.*

	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
PRINCIPAL PARTS. —	capior,	capī,	captus sum.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.

capior, caperis, capitur;	capimur, capiminī, capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur;	capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, -iēbantur.

FUTURE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capiar, -iēris, -iētur;	capiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captus sum, es, est;	captī sumus, estis, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captus eram, erās, erat;	captī erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captus erō, eris, erit;	captī erimus, eritis, erunt.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

capiar, -iāris, -iātur;	capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.

IMPERFECT.

caperer, -erēris, -erētur;	caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.

PERFECT.

captus sim, sīs, sit;	captī sīmus, sītis, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captus essem, essēs, esset;	captī essēmus, essētis, essent.

Imperative.

Pres.	capere:	capiminī.
Fut.	capitor,	
	capitor;	capiuntor.

Infinitive.

Pres.	capī.
Perf.	captus esse.
Fut.	captum īrī.

Participle.

Perf.	captus.
Gerundive	capiendus.

233. VOCABULARY.

accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I receive.*
capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *I take, adopt; capture.*
dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *I plunder.*
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *I make, do;* passive irregular; see § 275.
fīlius, ī (iī), m., *son.*
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *I flee.*
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I kill.*
lībertās, tātis, f., *liberty.*
majōrēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors.*
mandātum, ī, n., *command, order.*
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation, tribe.*
palūs, lūdis, f., *marsh.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
rūrsus, *again.*
subitō, *suddenly.*
supplicium, ī (iī), n., *torture, punishment.*

EXERCISES.

234. 1. Accipiunt, accipiēbāmus, accipiāmus. 2. Fugiam, fūgerant, fūgisse. 3. Faciēbat, facient. 4. Accipitur, accipiētur, acceptus erat. 5. Accipī, accipiendus, acceptus esset. 6. Interfectus est, interficientur, interfecta erat. 7. Interfēcērunt, interficiendus, interfēcisse. 8. Accipiēns, accipiendō, accipis, accipiētis; fugit, fūgit.

235. 1. In eō flūmine pontem fēcerat. 2. Prīncipēs hārum nātiōnum bellum facient. 3. Hostēs rūrsus subitō impetum fēcērunt. 4. Lībertātem ā majōribus accēpimus. 5. Haec mandāta accepta erant. 6. Duo fīliī hūjus rēgis captī sunt. 7. Aliud cōnsilium capiāmus. 8. Hostēs in palūdēs fūgērunt. 9. Obsidēs magnīs suppliciīs interfectī sunt. 10. Hōc oppidum dīripiēbātur. 11. Fīlia rēgis capta est. 12. Ex hōc oppidō magnum numerum jūmentōrum dīripuimus. 13. Hīc homō interficī dēbet.

236. 1. We were taking; I had taken; they will take. 2. Let us take; let him take; taking. 3. They would have fled; he would have been killed. 4. They will be killed; they were killed. 5. Let us make a bridge! 6. This camp

was plundered. 7. The envoys of the king were received. 8. We received your commands. 9. We shall flee from these dangers.

237. Caesar Prepares to Prevent the Passage of the Helvetii.

Caesar autem eīs nihil pollicitus est. Lēgātōs ad Īdūs Aprīlīs[1] ad sē revertī jussit. Intereā eā legiōne[2] quam sēcum[3] habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā Lacū Lemannō (quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit) ad Montem Jūram (quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit) mīlia passuum ūndēvīgintī[4] mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Ibi praesidia dispōnit et castella commūnit.

---

[1] **ad Idus Aprilis**: *on the Ides of April;* literally, *at the Ides of April* (April 15th). [2] **ea legione**: *with that legion;* limiting *perducit* in line 6. [3] **secum**: *with him;* literally, *with himself;* the preposition *cum* is regularly appended to the personal and reflexive pronouns. [4] **milia passuum undeviginti**: *for nineteen miles;* literally, *for nineteen thousands of paces* (see § 114, 4). A thousand paces was a Roman mile, about five thousand feet.

LESSON XXXVIII.

DEPONENT VERBS.

238. Deponent Verbs have, in the main, Passive *forms* with Active *meaning*. But —

a) They have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.
b) They have the following Passive meanings: *always* in the Gerundive, and *sometimes* in the Perfect Passive Participle; as, —

sequendus, *to be followed;* **adeptus**, *having been attained.*

239. Paradigms of Deponent Verbs are —

I. Conjugation.

mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, *admire.*

II. Conjugation.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear.*

III. Conjugation.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

IV. Conjugation.

largior, largīrī, largītus sum, *give.*

III. Conjugation (in **-ior**).

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer.*

Indicative Mood.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	III. (in -ior)
Pres.	mīror	vereor	sequor	largior	patior
	mīrāris	verēris	sequeris	largīris	pateris
	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	largītur	patitur
	mīrāmur	verēmur	sequimur	largīmur	patimur
	mīrāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	largīminī	patiminī
	mīrantur	verentur	sequuntur	largiuntur	patiuntur
Impf.	mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	largiēbar	patiēbar
Fut.	mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	largiar	patiar
Perf.	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	largītus sum	passus sum
Plup.	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	largītus eram	passus eram
F.P.	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	largītus erō	passus erō

Subjunctive.

Pres.	mīrer	verear	sequar	largiar	patiar
Imp.	mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	largīrer	paterer
Perf.	mīrātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	largītus sim	passus sim
Plup.	mīrātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	largītus essem	passus essem

Imperative.

Pres.	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	largīre	patere
Fut.	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	largītor	patitor

Infinitive.

Pres.	mīrārī	verērī	sequī	largīrī	patī
Perf.	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	largītus esse	passus esse
Fut.	mīrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	largītūrus esse	passūrus esse

Participles.

Pres.	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	largiēns	patiēns
Fut.	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	largītūrus	passūrus
Perf.	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	largītus	passus
Ger.	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	largiendus	patiendus

Gerund.

mīrandī	verendī	sequendī	largiendī	patiendī
mīrandō, *etc.*	verendō, *etc.*	sequendō, *etc.*	largiendō, *etc.*	patiendō, *etc.*

Supine.

mīrātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	largītum, -tū	passum, -sū

240. VOCABULARY.

adorior, orīrī, ortus sum, *I attack.*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep.,[1] *I dare.*
colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, *I converse, confer.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *I endeavor, attempt.*
ēgredior, ī, gressus sum, *I march out.*
īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., *ambush, plot.*
Jūra, ae, m., *the Jura,* chain of mountains on the west of Switzerland.
moror, ārī, ātus sum, *I tarry, delay.*
nēmō, m., *no one,* dat., **nēminī,** acc. **nēminem;** gen. and abl. not used.
paulum, adv., *a little.*
Pompejus, eī, m., *Pompey.*
proficīscor, ī, fectus sum, *I set out.*
prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, *I advance, go forward.*
propter, *on account of,* prep. with acc.
resistō, ere, restitī, *I resist.*
revertor, tī, *I return.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

EXERCISES.

241. 1. Audēbimus, ausī erant, ausus. 2. Adoriēbātur, adortus, adortus est. 3. Prōgredimur, prōgressus, prōgredientur. 4. Adoriendus, morāns, collocūtī erāmus. 5. Cōnābar, cōnātus sum. 6. Morēmur, morāmur, morāminī. 7. Morāta est, morāta esset, morāns. 8. Morātus esse, morātus, morandō. 9. Collocūtī sumus, colloquimur, colloquantur.

242. 1. Hostēs agmen nostrum ex īnsidiīs adortī sunt. 2. Nēmō resistere ausus est. 3. Caesar dē salūte commūnī cum Pompejō colloquēbātur. 4. Helvētiī ex fīnibus suīs ēgressī sunt. 5. Inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum iter facere cōnantur. 6. Propter hās causās proficīscēmur. 7. Hostēs nōn diū morātī sunt. 8. Equitēs paulum prōgressī revertuntur. 9. Īnsidiās verēbāmur. 10. In hanc urbem celeriter revertentur. 11. Hunc collem nātūrā mūnītum dēfendere cōnābimur. 12. Nātūra locī exercitum morāta est.

---

[1] A few verbs have active forms in the Present System, but passive forms elsewhere. These are called semi-deponent.

243. 1. He was marching forth; they marched forth; let us march forth. 2. We ought to return. 3. We have tarried; you were tarrying; they had tarried. 4. I set out; he will set out; they would have set out. 5. No one dared to march forth. 6. We have not yet endeavored to send this letter. 7. Who will dare to resist? 8. The troops advanced a little. 9. We shall return.



STANDARD BEARERS (signiferi) and TRUMPETERS (tubicines, cornicines).

LESSON XXXIX.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

244. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations,—the Active and the Passive. The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the auxiliary **sum**, the Passive by combining the Gerundive with the same auxiliary.

The Active Periphrastic Conjugation expresses *an intended or future act;* the Passive expresses *necessity or duty.*

Active Periphrastic Conjugation.—Indicative Mood.

Pres. **amātūrus (-a, -um) sum,** *I am about to love.*
Imp. **amātūrus eram,** *I was about to love.*
Fut. **amātūrus erō,** *I shall be about to love.*
Perf. **amātūrus fuī,** *I have been (was) about to love.*
Plup. **amātūrus fueram,** *I had been about to love.*
Fut. P. **amātūrus fuerō,** *I shall have been about to love.*

Subjunctive.

Pres. **amātūrus sim,** *may I be about to love.*
Imp. **amātūrus essem,** *I should be about to love.*
Perf. **amātūrus fuerim**
Plup. **amātūrus fuissem,** *I should have been about to love.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **amātūrus esse,** *to be about to love.*
Perf. **amātūrus fuisse,** *to have been about to love.*

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.—Indicative Mood.

Pres. **amandus (-a, -um) sum,** *I am to be loved, must be loved.*
Imp. **amandus eram,** *I was to be loved.*
Fut. **amandus erō,** *I shall deserve to be loved.*
Perf. **amandus fuī,** *I was to be loved.*
Plup. **amandus fueram,** *I had deserved to be loved.*
Fut. P. **amandus fuerō,** *I shall have deserved to be loved.*

Subjunctive.

Pres. **amandus sim**, *may I deserve to be loved.*
Imp. **amandus essem**, *I should deserve to be loved.*
Perf. **amandus fuerim**
Plup. **amandus fuissem**, *I should have deserved to be loved.*

Infinitive.

Pres. **amandus esse**, *to deserve to be loved.*
Perf. **amandus fuisse**, *to have deserved to be loved.*

245. VOCABULARY.

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*
cōnservō, 1, *I preserve.*
dēdō, ere, dēdidī, itus, *I give up, surrender.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune.*
incommodum, ī, n., *disaster.*
līberō, 1, *I set free.*
loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *I speak.*
post, *after*, prep. with acc.
recūsō, 1, *I refuse.*
tot, *so many*, indecl.
vīta, ae, f., *life.*

EXERCISES.

246. 1. Līberātūrus eram, līberātūrī erāmus. 2. Cōnservandus est, cōnservandī fuērunt. 3. Līberandī sunt, līberandī erunt. 4. Locūtūrus fuit, locūtūrī fuerant. 5. Profectūrus fuī, profectūrī erāmus, profectūra est. 6. Trādendus est, trādendī sunt, trādenda est. 7. Trāditūrus es, trāditūrus fuistī, trāditurī fuērunt. 8. Sequendus est, sequendī erant.

247. 1. Equitēs ex castrīs ēgressūrī sunt. 2. Post hōc proelium sē dēditūrī erant. 3. Nunc cum magnā caede dīmicātūrī sunt. 4. Dē hīs tot incommodīs locūtūrus fuit. 5. Vītae nostrae et fortūnae cōnservandae sunt. 6. Hae urbēs sunt līberandae. 7. Auxilium nōn est recūsandum.[1] 8. Hostēs hōc oppidum dīreptūrī erant. 9. Haec oppida nōn dīripienda sunt. 10. Hae nāvēs longae omnibus rēbus īnstruendae sunt. 11. Dē magnā caede hostium locūtūrus fuī. 12. Inter nōs et vōs amīcitia cōnfīrmanda est.

---

[1] **est recūsandum** = *recūsandum est;* such inversions are common.

248. 1. We had been about to speak. 2. The soldiers were on the point of attacking (= were about to attack) this town. 3. She was about to set out. 4. That camp must be defended. 5. Peace must be established with other states. 6. Our liberty must be defended. 7. He was about to wage war. 8. We were on the point of surrendering ourselves.[1]

REVIEW.

249. 1. Mandāta rēgis nōndum accēpimus. 2. Magnus pōns in hōc flūmine faciendus est. 3. Dēbēs haec castra expugnāre. 4. Equitātus signa vīdit quae in altō colle posita erant. 5. Manē in hōc locō! 6. Proelium in locō apertō commīsērunt. 7. Suspīciōnem timōris vītāre dēbēs. 8. Dīligentiam nostram augeāmus! 9. Praesidium parvum in prōvinciā ulteriōre positum est. 10. Hī veterēs amīcī nōn relinquendī sunt. 11. Multae nāvēs longae īnstruentur. 12. Hāc fāmā perterrēbātur. 13. Vōcēs captīvōrum in castrīs audītae sunt.

250. The Helvetii Attempt to Pass through the Territory of the Sequani.

Helvētiī quod[2] hāc[3] trānsīre[4] nōn poterant, alterum iter temptāvērunt. Jam per angustiās[5] et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt et auxilium rogant. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt,[6] atque opem ab eō petunt.

---

[1] See § 123.

[2] **quod**: *because*. [3] **hac**: *by this way*; adv. [4] **transire**: *to pass*; inf. [5] **angustias**: the pass referred to is that on the *iter angustum et difficile* mentioned in § 210. [6] **fuga se recipiunt**: *betook themselves in flight*.

LESSON XL.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

251. A number of Verbs are called Irregular. The most important are **sum, dō, ferō, volō, nōlō, mālō, eō, fīō.**

252. The Inflection of **sum** has already been given. Its various compounds are inflected in the same way. Examples are —

absum	abesse	āfuī	āfutūrus	*am absent*

Pres. Partic. absēns (absentis), *absent.*

adsum	adesse	adfuī	adfutūrus	*am present*
praesum	praeesse	praefuī	praefutūrus	*am in charge of*

Pres. Partic. praesēns (praesentis), *present.*

253. Possum. In its Present System **possum** is a compound of **pot-** (for **pote**, *able*) and **sum**; **potuī** is from an obsolete **potēre.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

possum, **posse,** **potuī,** *to be able.*

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	possum, potes, potest;	possumus, potestis, possunt.
Imp.	poteram;	poterāmus.
Fut.	poterō;	poterimus.
Perf.	potuī;	potuimus.
Plup.	potueram;	potuerāmus.
F. P.	potuerō;	potuerimus.

Subjunctive.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	possim, possīs, possit;	possīmus, possītis, possint.
Imp.	possem;	possēmus.
Perf.	potuerim;	potuerīmus.
Plup.	potuissem;	potuissēmus.

Infinitive.

Pres. posse. *Perf.* potuisse.

Participle.

Pres. potēns (*as an adjective*), *powerful.*

254. VOCABULARY.

dēsum, **dĕesse**, **dēfuī**, *I am wanting, fail.*
excēdō, **ere**, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, *I depart from.*
longē, adv., *far.*
potestās, **tātis**, f., *power, opportunity.*
sententia, **ae**, f., *sentiment, opinion.*
tālis, **e**, *such.*
vulnus, **eris**, n., *wound.*

EXERCISES.

255. 1. Potuerant, potuisse, potuissem. 2. Adfuērunt, adfuisse, adsit. 3. Āfuisse, āfuissent, aberunt. 4. Āfuī, āfutūrus, absēns. 5. Aderant, aderō, adfuistī. 6. Potuī, posse, poterat. 7. Poterō, potuerō, poterunt, potuerint.

256. 1. Equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs dĕerant 2. Potestās pugnandī nōn dĕerit. 3. Ducēs nostrī adfuērunt. 4. Hostēs nōn longē aberant. 5. Tālēs sententiae probārī nōn possunt. 6. Mīlitēs quī vulnera accēpērunt ex aciē excēdere nōn poterant.

257. 1. He could;[1] they could; you can. 2. He will be able; they had been able; may he be able. 3. We should have been able; to have been able. 4. He was in charge; I had been in charge; they will be in charge. 5. We were absent; they would have been absent; to have been present. 6. We shall be present; we had been present; let him be present.

---

[1] I.e. *he was able.*

LESSON XLI.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

258. **Dō**, *I give.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.—**dō, dăre, dedī, dătus.**

Active Voice.—Indicative.

Pres.	dō, dās, dat;	dămus, dătis, dant.
Imp.	dăbam, *etc.*;	dăbāmus.
Fut.	dăbō, *etc.*;	dăbimus.
Perf.	dedī;	dedimus.
Plup.	dederam;	dederāmus.
F. P.	dederō;	dederimus.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	dem;	dēmus.
Imp.	dărem;	dărēmus.
Perf.	dederim;	dederīmus.
Plup.	dedissem;	dedissēmus.

Imperative.

Pres.	dā;	dăte.
Fut.	dătō;	dătōte,
	dătō;	dantō.

Infinitive.		**Participle.**
Pres.	dăre.	dāns.
Perf.	dedisse.	
Fut.	dătūrus esse.	dătūrus.

Gerund.	**Supine.**
dandī, *etc.*	dătum, dătū.

1. The Passive is inflected regularly with the short vowel. Thus: **dărī, dătur, dăbātur, dărētur,** *etc.*

259. VOCABULARY.

jūs jūrandum; gen. **jūris jūrandī**, n., *oath* (**jūs** and **jūrandum** are declined separately).
negōtium, ī (iī), n., *business.*
omnīnō, adv., *altogether, at all.*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
pūblicus, a, um, *public.*
respōnsum, ī, n., *answer.*

EXERCISES.

260. 1. Dabat, damus, dedistis, dederitis. 2. Dedisse, dederant, dent. 3. Dabās, datis, datūrī estis. 4. Dandī, data erat, datūrus esse. 5. Dabātur, darī, datī erant.

261. 1. Pecūnia pūblica Pompejō datur. 2. Mīlitibus signum dedit. 3. Omnēs lēgātī quī aderant jūs jūrandum dedērunt. 4. Hōc negōtium nōbīs dat. 5. Agrōs hārum nātiōnum nōbīs dedistī. 6. Sēquanī multōs obsidēs Ariovistō dederant. 7. Quis mihi hanc pecūniam dabit? 8. Nūllum respōnsum omnīnō tibi dedērunt.

262. 1. I had given; to have given; having been given. 2. You will give; he would give; I should have given. 3. To be given; it had been given; it would have been given. 4. We gave; he will have given; let him give. 5. Much[1] money had already been given. 6. We shall give much[1] money to you. 7. He would have given much money to us.

263. Caesar Cuts to Pieces One Division of the Helvetii.

Flūmen est Arar,[2] quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus trānsībant.[3] Trēs partēs cōpiārum jam trāductae erant; quārta pars citrā flūmen reliqua erat. Caesar dē tertiā vigiliā[4] cum tribus legiōnibus ē castrīs profectus,[5] ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum trānsierat, et magnum numerum concīdit.

---

[1] For 'much money' the Latin says, 'great money.' [2] **Flumen est Arar**: *there is a river, the Arar (by name).* [3] **transibant**: *were crossing.* [4] **de tertia vigilia**: *in the third watch.* [5] **profectus**: *having set out;* from *proficiscor.* It limits *Caesar.*

LESSON XLII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

264. **Ferō**, *I bear.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. — **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.**

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert;	ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Imp.	ferēbam;	ferēbāmus.
Fut.	feram;	ferēmus.
Perf.	tulī;	tulimus.
Plup.	tuleram;	tulerāmus.
Fut. P.	tulerō;	tulerimus.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	feram;	ferāmus.
Imp.	ferrem;	ferrēmus.
Perf.	tulerim;	tulerīmus.
Plup.	tulissem;	tulissēmus.

Imperative.

Pres.	fer;	ferte.
Fut.	fertō;	fertōte.
	fertō;	feruntō.

Infinitive.

Pres.	ferre.
Perf.	tulisse.
Fut.	lātūrus esse.

Participle.

Pres.	ferēns.
Fut.	lātūrus.

Gerund.

Gen.	ferendī.
Dat.	ferendō.
Acc.	ferrendum.
Abl.	ferendō.

Supine.

Acc.	lātum.
Abl.	lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. — **feror, ferrī, lātus sum,** *to be borne.*

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	feror, ferris, fertur;	ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.
Imp.	ferēbar;	ferēbāmur.
Fut.	ferar;	ferēmur.
Perf.	lātus sum;	lātī sumus.
Plup.	lātus eram;	lātī erāmus.
F. P.	lātus erō;	lātī erimus.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	ferar;	ferāmur.
Imp.	ferrer;	ferrēmur.
Perf.	lātus sim;	lātī sīmus.
Plup.	lātus essem;	lātī essēmus.

Imperative.

Pres.	ferre;	feriminī.
Fut.	fertor;	——
	fertor;	feruntor.

Infinitive.

Pres.	ferrī.
Perf.	lātus esse.
Fut.	lātum īrī.

Participle.

Perf.	lātus.
Ger.	ferendus.

So also the Compounds —

afferō	afferre	attulī	allātus	*bring*
auferō	auferre	abstulī	ablātus	*take away*
cōnferō	cōnferre	contulī	collātus	*collect*
īnferō	īnferre	intulī	illātus	*bring against*
referō	referre	rettulī	relātus	*bring back*

265. VOCABULARY.

afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *I bring.*

calamitās, tātis, f., *calamity.*

condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*

cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *I bring together;* **sē cōnferre,** *betake one's self.*

ignōminia, ae, f., *ignominy, disgrace.*

impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance;* in pl., *baggage.*

nē . . . quidem, *not even;* emphatic negative, emphasizing the expression placed between **nē** and **quidem.**

perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *I carry through, convey; endure.*

prōtinus, *forthwith, straightway.*

referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, *I bring back.*

subsidium, ī (iī), n., *assistance.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising.*

EXERCISES.

266. 1. Afferet, attulimus, attulisse. 2. Lātus esse, lātī essent, ferendus. 3. Perfertur, perferēbantur, perlātī sunt. 4. Refert, rettulērunt, rettulissent. 5. Rettulisse, relātī sunt, referuntur. 6. Tulērunt, ferendō, lātūrus. 7. Tulisse, ferēns, ferēbat. 8. Affertur, afferētur, allātus esse. 9. Referēns, referendī, relātūrus. 10. Contulisse, collātus.

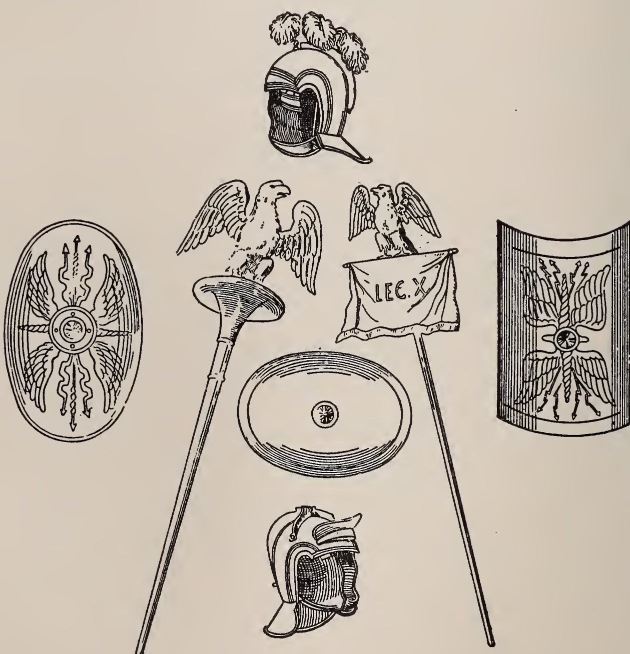
267. 1. Hostēs nē prīmum quidem impetum tulērunt. 2. Nōbīs subsidium ferēbat. 3. Pompejus sē prōtinus in castra contulit. 4. Helvētiī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt. 5. Hīc nūntius condiciōnēs pācis affert. 6. Fāma dē hōc tumultū allāta est. 7. Multās calamitātēs pertulimus. 8. Ea fāma ad Caesarem perlāta est. 9. Signa mīlitāria referuntur. 10. Ignōminiam ferre nōn possumus. 11. Hīc nūntius fāmam dē tumultū attulit. 12. Sine hāc spē hōs labōrēs numquam pertulissem. 13. Magna cōpia frūmentī allāta erat.

268. 1. We bore; we have borne; he had borne. 2. He would have borne; by bearing; to have borne. 3. Let us bear; we were bearing; they will bear. 4. Let us endure;

to have endured; enduring. 5. The standards were brought back. 6. The Helvetii betook themselves to the mountain. 7. We shall bear assistance to you.[1] 8. Who will be able to endure these tortures?

---

[1] Use the Dative.



HELMETS (galeae), SHIELDS (scuta), and STANDARDS (signa).

LESSON XLIII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

269. **Volō, nōlō, mālō.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

volō,	**velle,**	**voluī,**	*to wish, be willing.*
nōlō,	**nōlle,**	**nōluī,**	*to be unwilling.*
mālō,	**mālle,**	**māluī,**	*to prefer.*

Indicative Mood.

Pres.	volō,	nōlō,	malō,
	vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
	vult;	nōn vult;	māvult;
	volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
	vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
	volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
Imp.	volēbam.	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
Fut.	volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
Perf.	voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
Plup.	volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram.
Fut. P.	voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	velim, -īs, -it, *etc.*	nōlim.	mālim.
Imp.	vellem, -ēs, -et, *etc.*	nōllem.	māllem.
Perf.	voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
Plup.	voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

Imperative.

Pres. nōlī, nōlīte.
Fut. nōlītō, nōlītō; nōlītōte, nōluntō.

Infinitive.

Pres.	velle.	nōlle.	mālle.
Perf.	voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.

Participle.

Pres.	volēns.	nōlēns.

270. VOCABULARY.

dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus, *I abandon, desert.*
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I depart.*
hūc, adv., *hither.*
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime.*
ōra, ae, f., *coast.*
quārē, adv., *wherefore, why?*
semper, *always.*
socius, ī (iī), m., *ally, comrade.*

EXERCISES.

271. 1. Mālumus, māluimus, mālēbat. 2. Māvultis, māluisset, nōluisse. 3. Voluerātis, voluistī, volueris. 4. Volētis, volēbas, voluisse. 5. Māvīs, māluisse, māvult. 6. Mālit, mālet, māluit. 7. Volueram, voluissētis, voluit. 8. Nōn vult, nōlet, nōluerant.

272. 1. Ab ōrā maritimā discēdere nōlēbat. 2. Quārē sociōs nostrōs semper vexāre vultis? 3. Hūc venīre nōluimus. 4. Officium suum dēserere nōluerat. 5. Māluissēmus in hīs locīs manēre. 6. Ab hōc oppidō discēdere nōluissem. 7. Hās victōriās laudāre volēbāmus. 8. In hāc urbe manēre mālumus.

273. 1. We wished; we should have wished; to have wished. 2. I had been unwilling; you were unwilling; you are unwilling. 3. To have preferred; he would have preferred; he had preferred. 4. He had been unwilling to withdraw. 5. No one preferred to remain here. 6. We do not wish to abandon our country. 7. He will prefer to depart from this town.

274. **The Helvetii Send Envoys to Caesar.**

Post hōc proelium Caesar reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum secūtus est. Pontem in Ararī[1] fēcit atque ita exercitum trā-

[1] **in Arari**: *over the Arar.* The Latin speaks of making a bridge *in* a river.

dūxit. Helvētiī repentīnō ejus adventū commōtī,[1] lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūjus lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī in bellō Cassiānō[2] dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:[3] "Sī pācem nōbīscum[4] faciēs, in eam partem[5] ībimus atque ibi manēbimus, ubi volēs; sīn bellō[6] nōs persequī volēs, reminīscere[7] prīstinam virtūtem Helvētiōrum."

---

[1] **commoti**: *alarmed;* agreeing with *Helvetii.* [2] **bello Cassiano**: the Cassian War is so called from Lucius Cassius, a Roman general, defeated by the Helvetii some fifty years before the events here narrated. [3] **egit**: *parleyed;* from *ago.* [4] **nobiscum**: *cum* is regularly appended to the personal pronoun. [5] **in eam partem**: *to that quarter, to that place.* [6] **bello**: *by war*, or, *in war.* [7] **reminiscere**: *remember!* imperative.

LESSON XLIV.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

275. **Fīō** (Passive of **faciō**).

Principal Parts.—**fīō, fierī,**[1] **factus sum,** *to become, be made, occur.*

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit;	fīmus, fītis, fīunt.
Imp.	fīēbam;	fīēbāmus.
Fut.	fīam;	fīēmus.
Perf.	factus sum;	factī sumus.
Plup.	factus eram;	factī erāmus.
Fut. P.	factus erō;	factī erimus.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	fīam;	fīāmus.
Imp.	fierem;	fierēmus.
Perf.	factus sim;	factī sīmus.
Plup.	factus essem;	factī essēmus.

Imperative.

Pres.	fī;	fīte.

Infinitive.

Pres.	fierī.
Perf.	factus esse.
Fut.	factum īrī.

Participle.

Perf.	factus.
Ger.	faciendus.

276. VOCABULARY.

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason.*
certus, a, um, *sure;* compar. **certior**; in phrase **certior fierī,** *be informed* (*made more certain*).
concursus, ūs, m., *a running together.*
crēber, bra, brum, *frequent.*
ob, *on account of,* prep. with acc.
per, *through, by means of,* prep. with acc.
perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*
prō, *in front of,* prep. with abl.
repentīnus, a, um, *sudden.*

---

[1] The **i** is regularly short before **er** in this verb.

277. 1. Fīēbat, factum est, fīat. 2. Fit, factum erat, factus. 3. Fierī, factus esse, fīunt. 4. Fieret, fīāmus, facta est.

278. 1. Ob eam causam crēbra proelia fīēbant. 2. Ex castrīs Gallōrum fit fuga repentīna. 3. Dē hīs rēbus per perfugās certior factus est. 4. Prō castrīs magnus concursus fīēbat. 5. Nōs dē hōc Gallōrum tumultū certiōrēs factī sumus. 6. Ob hās causās illud factum est.

279. 1. We had become; may he become; they would have become. 2. Caesar had been informed concerning this thing. 3. You and Pompey had been made consuls. 4. By this disaster you and your brother became captives (nominative). 5. The Gauls will not become free. 6. Many battles took place in Italy.

LESSON XLV.

IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued).

280. **Eō.**

Principal Parts. — **eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum (est)**, *to go.*

Indicative Mood.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Pres.	eō, īs, it;	īmus, ītis, eunt.
Imp.	ībam;	ībāmus.
Fut.	ībō;	ībimus.
Perf.	īvī (iī);	īvimus (iimus).
Plup.	īveram (ieram);	īverāmus (ierāmus).
Fut. P.	īverō (ierō);	īverimus (ierimus).

Subjunctive.

Pres.	eam;	eāmus.
Imp.	īrem;	īrēmus.
Perf.	īverim (ierim);	īverīmus (ierīmus).
Plup.	īvissem (iissem, īssem);	īvissēmus (iissēmus, īssēmus).

Imperative.

Pres.	ī;	īte.
Fut.	ītō,	ītōte,
	ītō;	euntō.

Infinitive.

Pres.	īre.
Perf.	īvisse (iisse, īsse).
Fut.	itūrus esse.

Participle.

Pres.	iēns. (*Gen.* euntis.)
Fut.	itūrus.

Gerund.

eundī, *etc.*

Supine.

itum, itū.

1. Transitive compounds of **eō** admit the full Passive inflection; as, **adeor, adīris, adītur**, *etc.*

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs lack certain forms. The following are the most important:—

281. USED MAINLY IN THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

Coepī, *I have begun, I began.* **Meminī**, *I remember.* **Ōdī**, *I hate.*

Indicative Mood.

Perf.	coepī.	meminī.	ōdī.
Plup.	coeperam.	memineram.	ōderam.
Fut. P.	coeperō.	meminerō.	ōderō.

Subjunctive.

Perf.	coeperim.	meminerim.	ōderim.
Plup.	coepissem.	meminissem.	ōdissem.

Imperative.

Sing. mementō; *Plur.* mementōte.

Infinitive.

Perf.	coepisse.	meminisse.	ōdisse.
Fut.	coeptūrus esse.		ōsūrus esse.

Participle.

Perf.	coeptus, *begun.*		ōsus.
Fut.	coeptūrus.		ōsūrus.

1. Note that **meminī** and **ōdī**, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have the force respectively of the Imperfect and Future; as, **memineram**, *I remembered;* **ōderō**, *I shall hate.*

282. VOCABULARY.

adeō, **īre**, **iī**, **itus**, *I go to, visit.*
circiter, adv., *about.*
circumeō, **īre**, **iī**, **itus**, *I go around, surround.*
clam, *secretly.*
duodecim, indecl., *twelve.*
eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
incipiō, **ere**, **cēpī**, **ceptus**, *I begin.*
ineō, **īre**, **iī**, **itus**, *I enter upon*; **cōnsilium inīre**, *form a plan.*
initium, **ī** (**iī**), n., *beginning.*
injūria, **ae**, f., *wrong, injustice.*
intereō, **īre**, **iī**, **itūrus**, *I perish.*
Mosa, **ae**, f., the river *Meuse.*
redeō, **īre**, **iī**, **itum**, *I return.*
sinister, **tra**, **trum**, *left.*
trāns, *across*, prep. with acc.
trānseō, **īre**, **iī**, **itus**, *I cross.*
turpis, **e**, *base.*
unde, *whence.*

EXERCISES.

283. 1. Meminerat, meminerō, meminisse. 2. Adiisse, adiisset, adeāmus. 3. Eundō, itūrus esse, ierat. 4. Redīmus, rediimus, redeāmus. 5. Interībit, interierant. 6. Interiisse, interitūrus, interiit. 7. Trānsībāmus, trānsiit, trānsībunt. 8. Adīmus, adībant, adiī. 9. Redībitis, rediērunt, redībās, rediēns. 10. Ōdisse, ōdit, ōderat.

284. 1. Hostēs sinistrum cornū circumīre cōnantur. 2. Magna pars exercitūs interiit. 3. Caesar eō, unde rediimus, proficīscitur. 4. Circiter duodecim milia Germānōrum Rhēnum trānsībant. 5. Hostēs trānseundī initium faciunt. 6. Equitēs, quī trāns Mosam ierant, nōndum redierant. 7. Hās nātiōnēs adībimus. 8. Barbarī cōnsilia dē bellō clam inīre incipiunt. 9. Hōc flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. 10. Hās injūriās meminerāmus. 11. Turpēs cīvīs ōdimus. 12. Ex hāc prōvinciā in urbem redierat. 13. Omnēs injūriās meministī quās pater tuus pertulit. 14. Quārē initium trānseundī fēcistī?

285. 1. We were returning; we should have returned; to have returned; they will cross. 2. They had crossed; they crossed; he will cross. 3. You will remember; they were remembering; we hate; let us hate; he hated. 4. I had

begun to cross the river. 5. Two thousand cavalry[1] perished. 6. The cavalry of the enemy went around the camp of the Romans. 7. This river is crossed[2] by a ford. 8. The soldiers will return.

286. **Continuation of the Negotiations.**

Hīs lēgātīs Caesar ita respondit: "Sī obsidēs mihi ā vōbīs dabuntur, et sī Haeduīs[3] de injūriīs[4] satisfaciētis quās eīs sociīsque[5] eōrum intulistis, vobīscum[6] pācem faciam." Dīvicō respondit: "Helvētiī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare,[7] cōnsuēvērunt."[8] Post hōc respōnsum discessit.

Posterō diē[9] Helvētiī castra ex hōc locō mōvērunt. Caesar idem fēcit et cum equitātū hostēs sequēbātur.

Ita diēs circiter quīndecim[10] nōn longō intervāllō[11] iter fēcērunt.[12]

---

[1] See § 114, 4. [2] See § 280, 1. [3] **si Haeduis satisfacietis**: *if you make amends to the Haedui.* [4] **de injuriis**: *for the damages.* [5] **eis sociisque eorum**: *upon them and their allies* (dative). [6] **vobiscum**: for *cum* appended to personal pronouns, compare § 274, *nobiscum.* [7] **obsides accipere, non dare**: *to receive hostages, not to give* (*them*); dependent on *consueverunt.* [8] **consueverunt**: *are accustomed;* the perf. of *consuesco* has the force of the pres. [9] **postero die**: *on the following day.* [10] **dies circiter quindecim**: *for about fifteen days.* [11] **non longo intervallo**: *at no long distance* (ablative). [12] **iter fecerunt**: *they marched;* literally, *made their way.*

LESSON XLVI.

IMPERSONAL VERBS. — QUESTIONS.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

287. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English *it snows*, *it seems*, *etc.* They have no personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun; as, **mē pudet hōc fēcisse**, lit. *it shames me to have done this;* **hōc decet**, *this is fitting.* Examples are: —

paenitet	paenitēre	paenituit	*it repents, it causes regret*
licet	licēre	licuit	*it is permitted*
oportet	oportēre	oportuit	*it is fitting*
accidit	accidere	accidit	*it happens.*

Specially to be noted is the impersonal use of such Passive forms as, —

curritur	lit. *it is run*	i.e. *some one runs*
pugnātum est	lit. *it was fought*	i.e. *the battle raged*
ventum est	lit. *it has been come*	i.e. *some one has come*
veniendum est	lit. *it must be come*	i.e. *somebody must come.*

QUESTIONS.

288. Questions may be either Word-Questions or Sentence-Questions.

1. Word-Questions. These are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs; such as — **quis**, **quī**, **quō**, **quā**, *etc.* Thus: —

quis venit, *who comes?*
quam diū manēbit, *how long will he stay?*

2. Sentence-Questions. These are introduced —

a) By **nōnne** implying the answer '*yes*'; as, —

nōnne vidēs, *do you not see?*

b) By **num** implying the answer '*no*'; as, —
num exspectās, *do you expect?* (i.e. *you don't expect, do you?*).

c) By the enclitic **-ne**, appended to the emphatic word (which usually stands first), and simply asking for information; as, —

vidēsne, *do you see?*

289. VOCABULARY.

concurrō, ere, currī, concursum, *run together.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *I say.*
līberī, -ōrum, m., *children* (free-born).
melior, ius, *better*, comp. of **bonus**.
-nĕ, enclitic interrog. particle, asking for information.
neglegō, ere, ēxī, ēctus, *I neglect.*
nōnne, interrog. particle, expecting answer "yes."
num, interrog. particle, expecting answer "no."
profugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *I flee, escape.*
quandō, *when?*
quō, *whither*, interrog. and rel. adv.
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *I write.*
vir, virī, m., *man.*

EXERCISES.

290. 1. Audācter resistendum est. 2. Undique ad signa concurritur.[1] 3. Eō conventum est.[2] 4. Nōnne hās litterās scrīpsistī? 5. Num virī bonī patriam dēfendere recūsant? 6. Num hōs līberōs neglēxistī? 7. Quandō meliōrem virum vidēbis? 8. Hāsne sententiās probāvistis? 9. Quō profūgērunt? 10. Quid dīxistī? 11. Undique ad signa concursum est. 12. Nōnne vetera incommoda meministī? 13. Nōn oportet officium neglegere. 14. Licet rēs meliōrēs spērāre.

---

[1] Lit. *it is run together*, i.e. *the men rush.*
[2] Lit. *it was assembled thither*, i.e. *men assembled there.*

291. 1. When will you come to us?[1] 2. Where have you been? 3. Where (=whither) have they gone? 4. What would you have said? 5. Did you not see us? 6. You will not neglect your duty, will you? 7. Have they returned? 8. Would you have written this letter? 9. Who will remain here?

REVIEW.

292. 1. Eō rediimus unde profectī erāmus. 2. Initium hūjus reī meminisse nōn potuī. 3. Aliud cōnsilium inīre clam coepērunt. 4. Nōn vult ūllīus hominis amīcus fierī. 5. Caesar dē tumultū Gallōrum certior fīet. 6. Tālia incommoda vix perferrī possunt. 7. Fāma hūjus tumultūs statim ad Caesarem allāta est. 8. Omnia perīcula hūjus itineris fortiter perfers. 9. Magna cōpia frūmentī in hīs oppidīs aderat. 10. Omnis spēs salūtis deest. 11. Hōs montēs vidēre vix poteris. 12. Helvētiī post quīnque mēnsēs in fīnes suōs redīre coāctī sunt. 13. Caesar cum eīs dē pācis condiciōnibus colloquēbātur.

---

[1] See § 125, footnote 1.

PART III.

SYNTAX.

LESSON XLVII.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

293. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object. It may express: —

a. The person or thing affected by the action; as, —

cōnsulem interfēcit, *he slew the consul.*

b. The result produced by the action; as, —

librum scrīpsī, *I wrote a book.*

TWO ACCUSATIVES — DIRECT OBJECT AND PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.

294. 1. Many Verbs of *Making*, *Choosing*, *Calling*, *Showing*, and the like, take two Accusatives, one the Direct Object, the other a Predicate Accusative; as, —

urbem Rōmam vocant, *they call the city Rome.*

Here **urbem** is Direct Object, **Rōmam** Predicate Accusative.

2. The Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective as well as a Noun; as, —

hostēs hōc iter perīculōsum reddiderant, *the enemy had rendered this route dangerous.*

3. In the Passive the Direct Object becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative; as, —

urbs Rōma vocāta est, *the city was called Rome.*

295. VOCABULARY.

aedificium, **ī** (**iī**), n., *building.*
alacer, **cris**, **cre**, *eager.*
appellō, 1, *I name*, *call.*
Bacēnis, **is**, f., *Bacenis*, a forest in Germany.
dēligō, **ere**, **lēgī**, **lēctus**, *I choose.*
dolor, **ōris**, m., *grief.*
efficiō, **ere**, **fēcī**, **fectus**, *I make*, *render.*
frāter, **tris**, m., *brother.*
hiemō, 1, *I pass the winter.*
incendō, **ere**, **cendī**, **cēnsus**, *I set on fire.*
inimīcus, **ī**, m., *a* (*personal*) *enemy.*
Lentulus, **ī**, m., *Lentulus*, a man's name.
Octodūrus, **ī**, m., *Octodurus*, a city of the *Veragri.*
opportūnus, **a**, **um**, *fit*, *opportune.*
praetor, **ōris**, m., *praetor.*
prīvātus, **a**, **um**, *private.*
pugna, **ae**, f., *fight*, *battle.*
-que, *and*, enclitic conj.
sentiō, **īre**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, *I feel.*

EXERCISES.

296. 1. Haec rēs hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcerat. 2. Populus Rōmānus Lentulum praetōrem fēcit. 3. Galba in vīcō quī Octodūrus appellātur hiemat. 4. Helvētiī hunc locum opportūnissimum jūdicāvērunt. 5. Caesarem dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciunt. 6. Hīc homō dux dēlēctus est. 7. Suum frātrem inimīcum jūdicāverat. 8. Haec silva appellātur Bacēnis. 9. Helvētiī vīcōs reliquaque prīvāta aedificia incendunt. 10. Dolōrem sentīmus. 11. Magnum exercitum parāvimus. 12. Gallī hunc montem Jūram appellāvērunt. 13. Virtūs imperātōris mīlitēs fortiōrēs efficit.

297. 1. We have made Galba leader. 2. Galba had been made leader. 3. The Helvetii called this town Geneva. 4. The valor of the commander made[1] the soldiers braver. 5. The Belgians were adjudged the bravest of the Gauls. 6. Caesar adjudged the Belgians the bravest of the Gauls. 7. Whom, O soldiers,[2] will you choose (as) commander?

---

[1] Use **efficiō**.

[2] The Vocative regularly stands in the second place in the sentence.

298. Caesar Prepares for Battle.

Paulō post[1] ab[2] explōrātōribus certior factus est, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse[3] octō mīlia passuum[4] ab ipsīus[5] castrīs. Dē tertiā vigiliā[6] T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus summum jugum montis ascendere jussit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō[7] hostēs ierant,[8] ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mīsit. Labiēnus, postquam montem occupāvit, nostrōs exspectābat. Caesar autem per falsum nūntium dēceptus,[9] proelium hōc diē nōn commīsit.

---

[1] **paulo post**: *a little afterwards*; lit. *afterwards by a little*; *post* is the adverb. [2] **ab**: *by*. [3] **hostes sub monte consedisse**: *that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain*; dependent on *certior factus est*; lit. *was informed the enemy to have encamped, etc.* [4] **octo milia passuum**: *eight miles away*; Accusative of Extent of Space, § 301. [5] **ipsius**: referring to Caesar. [6] **de tertia vigilia**: as in § 263. [7] **eodem itinere quo**: *by the same route as*; lit. *by the same route by which*. [8] **ierant**: from *eō*. [9] **per falsum nuntium deceptus**: one of Caesar's aides falsely reported to him that the hill was occupied, not by Labienus, but by the Helvetii.

LESSON XLVIII.

THE ACCUSATIVE (Continued).

TWO ACCUSATIVES. — PERSON AND THING.

299. 1. Some Verbs of *Asking*, *Demanding*, *Teaching*, *etc.*, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing; as, —

> **tē haec rogō**, *I ask you this;*
> **tē litterās doceō**, *I teach you* (*your*) *letters.*

2. In the Passive construction the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject, and the Accusative of the Thing is retained; as, —

> **is omnēs artēs ēdoctus est**, *he was taught all accomplishments.*

TWO ACCUSATIVES WITH COMPOUNDS.

300. 1. Transitive compounds of **trāns** may take two Accusatives, one dependent upon the Verb, the other upon the Preposition; as, —

> **mīlitēs flūmen trādūcit**, *he leads his soldiers across the river.*

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

301. *Duration of Time* and *Extent of Space* are denoted by the Accusative; as, —

> **quadrāgintā annōs vīxit**, *he lived forty years;*
> **arborēs quīnquāgintā pedēs altae**, *trees fifty feet high.*

ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT OF MOTION.

302. 1. The Accusative of Limit of Motion is used,—

a. With names of *Towns;* as,—

Rōmam vēnī, *I came to Rome;*

b. With **domum**, *home;* **domōs**, *to their (your, our) homes;* **rūs**, *to the country;* as,—

domum revertitur, *he returns home.*

2. Other designations of place than those above mentioned require a Preposition (**in** or **ad**) to denote Limit of Motion; as,—

ad Italiam vēnit, *he came to Italy.*

303. VOCABULARY.

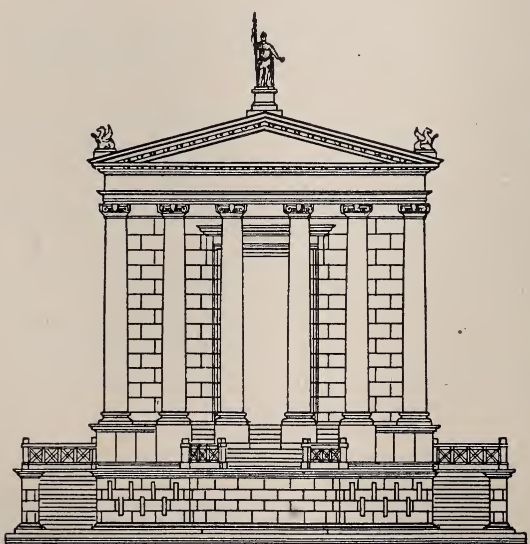
ā, ab, *from*, prep. with abl.; before a vowel or **h**, the form **ab** must be used.
ac (**atque**), *and, and also;* **ac** is not used before *vowels.*
annus, ī, m., *year.*
Athēnae, ārum, f., *Athens.*
bīduum, ī, n., *two days.*
cottīdiē, adv., *every day, daily.*
domus, ūs, f., *house, home.*
flāgitō, 1, *I demand.*
Hibērus, ī, m., *Hiberus*, a river in Spain.
interim, *in the meanwhile.*
moneō, ēre, uī, itus, *I advise, warn.*
obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *I occupy, hold.*
ops, opis, f. (nom. sing. is not used), *power, help;* in pl., *resources.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet).
petō, ere, īvī (iī), ītus, *I seek, request.*
polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *I promise.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *kingdom.*
rogō, 1, *I ask.*
sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred.*
trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead across.*

EXERCISES.

304. 1. Caesar interim cottīdiē Haeduōs frūmentum, quod pollicitī erant, flāgitat. 2. Ā tē opem petō. 3. Sine perīculō ac timōre cōpiās Hibērum trādūxit. 4. Sententiam rogātus est. 5. Hōc mē monēs. 6. Decem annōs rēgnum obtinuit. 7. Bīduum in hīs locīs morātus est. 8. Hīc

locus ab hostibus sescentōs passūs aberat. 9. Cōpiās domum redūxit. 10. Athēnās redierat. 11. In Galliam contendimus. 12. Decem mīlia passuum reductī sunt. 13. Tē pecūniam quam mihi dēbēbās flāgitāvī. 14. Illa turris trīgintā pedēs alta fuit.

305. 1. I shall teach you all these things. 2. We had been taught these things. 3. I have demanded the money of you. 4. These envoys requested help from Caesar. 5. Have you been asked your opinion? 6. Caesar will lead his troops across the Rhine. 7. We remained here ten years. 8. The camp of the enemy is a thousand paces distant. 9. We shall come to Rome. 10. Return home.



Temple of Caesar at Rome.

LESSON XLIX.

THE DATIVE.

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT.

306. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object. The Dative of Indirect Object is used, —

1. With transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative; as, —

> **hanc pecūniam mihi dat**, *he gives me this money.*

2. With many intransitive verbs; especially with verbs signifying *favor*, *help*, *injure*, *please*, *displease*, *trust*, *distrust*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like, as, —

> **Caesar populāribus favet**, *Caesar favors* (*i.e. is favorable to*) *the popular party.*
> **amīcīs cōnfīdō**, *I trust* (*to*) *my friends.*

3. With many verbs compounded with the prepositions: **ad**, **ante**, **com-** (**con-**), **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and sometimes **circum**; as, —

> **afflīctīs succurrit**, *he helps the afflicted;*
> **exercituī praefuit**, *he was in command of the army;*
> **eum exercituī praefēcī**, *I put him in charge of the army.*

307. VOCABULARY.

cōnfīdō, **ere**, **fīsus sum**, semi-dep., *I trust.*
īnferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **illātus**, *I bring upon.*
intersum, **esse**, **fuī**, *I am present at.*
Labiēnus, **i**, m., *Labienus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
mulier, **eris**, f., *woman.*
noceō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itūrus**, *I injure, harm.*
parcō, **ere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus**, *I spare.*
persuādeō, **ēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsum**, *I persuade.*
placeō, **ēre**, **uī**, **placitūrus**, *I please.*

praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I put in charge.*
praemium, ī (iī), n., *reward.*
praesum, esse, fuī, *I am in charge of.*
recēns, gen., **recentis,** *recent.*
rēs pūblica, gen., **reī pūblicae,** f., *state, republic.*
Sabīnus, ī, m., *Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation.*
terror, ōris, m., *terror, fear.*

EXERCISES.

308. 1. Reī pūblicae nocētis. 2. Caesar mulieribus pepercit. 3. Sabīnus eī magnīs praemiīs persuāsit. 4. Caesar eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat Labiēnum praefēcit. 5. Laudat eōs quī huic negōtiō praefuerant. 6. Mīlitēs nostrī maximum terrōrem hostibus īnferunt. 7. Caesar huic legiōnī propter virtūtem maximē cōnfīdēbat. 8. Hōc cōnsilium nōbīs placet. 9. Ego huic sermōnī interfuī. 10. Mīlitibus propter recentem victōriam magna praemia dōnat. 11. Parcite, cīvēs meī, reī pūblicae. 12. Nūllīs lēgātīs verbīs meīs persuādēre potueram. 13. Nōs illī negōtiō praefēcerat.

309. 1. We shall present rewards to our soldiers. 2. I had already given you[1] the letter. 3. Let us spare these children! 4. We have not injured you. 5. Trust these soldiers! 6. I had persuaded all these envoys. 7. I should easily have persuaded your brother. 8. We shall put you in charge of the smaller camp. 9. Caesar was in charge of many legions. 10. Who will bring war upon us?

310. Arrangement of the Roman Troops for Battle.

Posterō diē Helvētiī nostrōs ā novissimō agmine[2] īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt. Postquam Caesar id animadvertit, cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret

---

[1] Observe that the special sign of the indirect object (*to, for*) is often lacking in English. The pupil must have regard to the meaning.

[2] **a novissimo agmine**: *on the rear;* lit. *from the rear.*

hostium impetum,[1] mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō[2] triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs,[3] quās in Galliā Citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit ac tōtum montem hominibus complēvit.

---

[1] **qui sustineret impetum**: *to withstand the attack;* lit. *who should withstand the attack.* [2] **in colle medio**: *i.e. half-way up the hill.* [3] **legiones, auxilia**: objects of *collocavit.*



Roman Citizen in the Toga.

LESSON L.

THE DATIVE (Continued).

DATIVE OF AGENCY.

311. The Dative of Agency is used with the Gerundive; as, —

> **haec nōbīs agenda sunt**, *these things must be done by us;*
> **mihi eundum est**, *I must go* (lit. *it must be gone by me*).

DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

312. The Dative of Possession is used with the verb **sum**; as, —

> **mihi est liber**, *I have a book* (lit. *a book is to me*).

DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR TENDENCY.

313. The Dative of Purpose or Tendency denotes *the end toward which an action is directed* or *for which something exists;* as, —

> **castrīs locum dēligere**, *to choose a place for a camp.*

1. The Dative of Purpose or Tendency is often used in connection with another Dative of the object to which; as, —

> **nōbīs sunt odiō**, *they are an object of hatred to us* (lit. *are to us for hatred*).

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

314. The Dative is used with adjectives signifying: *friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to, suitable, etc.;* as, —

> **mihi inimīcus**, *hostile to me;*
> **proximus rīpae**, *next to the bank;*
> **castrīs idōneus locus**, *a place suitable for a camp.*

315. VOCABULARY.

adversus, a, um, *adverse.*
colloquium, ī (iī), n., *conference.*
cōnspectūs, ūs, m., *view, sight.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *I appoint.*
facinus, facinoris, n., *crime.*
pār, gen. **paris,** *equal.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
prōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *I throw, cast.*
proximus, a, um, *nearest, next;* see § 102. 1.
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
tēlum, ī, n., *javelin.*
Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., *Treveri,* a tribe of Belgians.
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, service.*
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

EXERCISES.

316. 1. Patria nōbīs dēfendenda est. 2. Ācriter nōbīs resistendum est.[1] 3. Mīlitibus sunt scūta tēlaque. 4. Quīnque cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relīquit. 5. Ūna rēs mīlitibus magnō ūsuī erat. 6. Diēs colloquiō dictus est. 7. Hīc ventus nōbīs adversus est. 8. Nūlla poena huic facinorī pār est. 9. Trēverī proximī Rhēnō sunt. 10. Haec verba tibi et amīcīs tuīs probanda sunt. 11. Cōnsilium vestrum nōbīs magnō ūsuī erat. 12. Gallī exercituī Rōmānō parēs nōn erant.

317. 1. This camp must be bravely defended by us. 2. We must make resistance (= it must be resisted by us; § 287). 3. The Helvetii had many villages. 4. The Romans had large fleets. 5. Let us appoint a day for a conference. 6. Caesar chose a place for a camp. 7. This place was suitable for a cavalry battle. 8. These villages are next the sea. 9. This thing was of great assistance [2] to us.

---

[1] See § 311, 2d example.
[2] Compare the fifth sentence in the Latin Exercise.

LESSON LI.

THE GENITIVE.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

318. A noun used to complete the meaning of another noun is put in the Genitive.

319. **The Genitive of Possession** denotes ownership; as,—

domus Cicerōnis, *Cicero's house.*

1. The Possessive Genitive is often used predicatively, especially with **esse** and **fierī**; as,—

domus est Cicerōnis, *the house is Cicero's.*

320. **The Subjective Genitive** denotes *the person who makes or produces something* or *who has a feeling*; as,—

dicta Cicerōnis, *the utterances of Cicero;*
timōrēs līberōrum, *the fears of the children.*

321. **The Objective Genitive** denotes *the object of an action or feeling*; as,—

metus deōrum, *fear of the gods.*

322. **The Genitive of the Whole** (Partitive Genitive) denotes the *whole* of which a part is taken; as,—

magna pars hominum, *a great part of mankind.*

1. The Genitive of the Whole occurs especially with the Neuter of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively; as,—

quid cōnsilī, *what purpose?* (lit. *what of purpose?*);
plūs auctōritātis, *more authority* (lit. *more of authority*).

323. **Genitive of Quality.** The Genitive modified by an Adjective is used to denote quality; as,—

vir magnae virtūtis, *a man of great valor;*
fossa quīndecim pedum, *a trench fifteen feet wide (or deep).*

1. The Genitive of Quality is often used predicatively; as, —

hīc vir est magnae virtūtis, *this man is of great valor.*

324. VOCABULARY.

āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I lose.*
ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*
arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *I summon.*
armātūra, ae, f., *equipment.*
cēterī, ae, a, *the rest, the other.*
cūstōdia, ae, f., *custody.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *I utter.*
imperium, ī (iī), n., *rule, command.*
jūstus, a, um, *just.*
levis, e, *light.*
modus, ī, m., *manner, kind.*
nōnnūllus, a, um, *some* (§ 83).
pābulum, ī, n., *forage.*
quantus, a, um, *how much, how great?*
satis, *enough*, indecl.
supersum, esse, fuī, *I remain, am left.*
tantus, a, um, *so much, so great.*
vāllum, ī, n., *intrenchment.*
via, ae, f., *road, way.*

EXERCISES.

325. 1. Ancorae nāvium āmissae sunt. 2. Imperium populī Rōmānī jūstissimum erat. 3. Cēterīs cohortibus cūstōdiam captīvōrum trādidit. 4. Quantum viae superest? 5. Tantum pābulī dĕerat. 6. Castrīs erat satis praesidī. 7. Dux peditēs levis armātūrae arcessīvit. 8. Erat vāllum decem pedum in altitūdinem. 9. Nōnnūllae sententiae ejus modī dīcēbantur. 10. Hīc adulēscēns summae dīligentiae fuerat. 11. Turrēs magnae altitūdinis cōpiās impediunt. 12. Quantum frūmentī et pābulī dēfuit? 13. Adulēscentem hūjus modī semper amāmus.

326. 1. Caesar's legions were brave. 2. The onset of the Gauls was withstood. 3. This victory of our troops was most welcome to the Romans. 4. Your recollection of my favors is most welcome to me. 5. How much forage was in the camp? 6. There was not enough money.[1] 7. These soldiers were of the greatest valor. 8. Our soldiers filled up a trench ten feet in[2] depth.

---

[1] Translate: 'Not enough of money was.'

[2] Use **in** with the acc.

327. The Battle Begins.

Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī[1] impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt;[2] ipsī, cōnfertissimā[3] aciē, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar equōs omnium ex cōnspectū remōvit atque cohortātus[4] suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, quī ē locō superiōre pīla mīsērunt, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt.

---

[1] **secuti**: *following.* [2] **contulerunt**: from *confero.* [3] **confertissima acie**: *in a very dense line of battle.* [4] **cohortatus suos**: *having encouraged his men.*

LESSON LII.

THE GENITIVE (Continued).

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

328. The Genitive is used with Adjectives signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *participation*, *power*, *fulness*, and their opposites; as, —

> **studiōsus discendī**, *desirous of learning;*
> **perītus bellī**, *skilled in war;*
> **cupidus bellī**, *desirous of war.*

GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

329. The Genitive is used with **meminī**, **reminīscor** (*remember*), **oblīvīscor** (*forget*);[1] as, —

> **animus praeteritōrum meminit**, *the mind remembers the past.*

Genitive with Impersonal Verbs.

330. The Impersonals **pudet**, *it shames;* **paenitet**, *it causes regret*, take the Accusative of *the person affected*, together with the Genitive *of the object toward which the feeling is directed;* as, —

> **pudet mē tuī**, *I am ashamed of you* (lit. *it shames me of you*).

Interest.

331. With **interest**, *the person* or *thing concerned* is denoted by the Genitive; as, —

> **patris interest**, *it concerns the father.*

---

[1] These also often govern the Accusative, especially of a neut. pron. or adj.

332. VOCABULARY.

beneficium, ī (iī), n., *kindness, favor.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *insult.*
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt.*
etiam, *also.*
genus, eris, n., *kind.*
imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced.*
oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum, *forget.*
paenitet, *it causes regret.*
plēnus, a, um, *full.*
prīstinus, a, um, *pristine.*

EXERCISES.

333. 1. Plēna est vīta perīculōrum. 2. Hūjus generis pugnae imperītī sumus. 3. Hārum contumēliārum meminimus. 4. Helvētiī prīstinae suae virtūtis nōn oblīvīscuntur. 5. Hūjus dēfectiōnis eōs paenitet. 6. Vīta illīus mulieris perīculōrum plēna fuerat. 7. Nōnne beneficiōrum nostrōrum meministis? 8. Prīstinae dēfectiōnis oblīvīscāmur!

334. 1. The Helvetii were fond of war. 2. They remembered the valor of their ancestors. 3. We shall not forget your favors. 4. Do you remember this revolt? 5. We regret this war. 6. We were inexperienced in dangers.

REVIEW.

335. 1. Amīcōs tuōs hōrum verbōrum paenituit. 2. Bellōrūm hūjus modī imperītus fuit. 3. Satis pecūniae mihi nōn erit. 4. Fossa decem pedum prō castrīs erat. 5. Cēterī, quī supererant, mīlitēs levis armātūrae erant. 6. Incolae hūjus īnsulae Italiae proximī sunt. 7. Proximum diem colloquiō dīximus. 8. Pāx et amīcitia omnibus cīvitātibus magnō ūsuī sunt. 9. Tēla et scūta Gallīs fuērunt. 10. Eīs mīlitibus parcam quibus semper cōnfīsus sum. 11. Hōc sermōne aliīs facile persuāsit. 12. Hae recentēs victōriae senātuī placuērunt.

LESSON LIII.

THE ABLATIVE.

336. The Ablative unites in itself three cases which were originally distinct both in **form** and in **meaning**; *viz.* —

The Genuine Ablative, or **from**-case.
The Instrumental, or **with**-case.
The Locative, or **where**-case.

GENUINE ABLATIVE USES.

Ablative of Separation.

337. The Ablative of Separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition. The preposition is omitted especially with verbs of *freeing*, *depriving*, *lacking*, and with adjectives of similar meaning; as, —

perīculīs līberātus, *freed from dangers.*

Ablative of Agent.

338. The Ablative accompanied by **ā (ab)** is used with passive verbs to denote the *personal agent;* as, —

ā Caesare accūsātus est, *he was accused by Caesar.*

Ablative of Comparison.

339. The Ablative is used with Comparatives in the sense of *than;* as, —

patria mihi vītā cārior est, *my country is dearer to me than life.*

1. But **plūs**, **amplius** (*more*), **minus** (*less*), and **longius** (*further*) are often used as the equivalents of **plūs quam**, **minus quam**, *etc.;* as, —

plūs decem hominēs aderant, *more than ten men were present.*

340. VOCABULARY.

ā, ab, *by*, prep. with abl.
amplius, *more.*
amplus, a, um, *great, glorious.*
commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies.*
dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement.*
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *I drive out.*
genus, eris, n., *stock, family.*
locus, ī, m., *place; family.*
nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *I am born.*
obsidiō, ōnis, f., *siege.*
occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *I kill.*
possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *I drive back, repel.*
septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*
Ubiī, ōrum, m., *Ubii,* a German tribe.
Usipetēs, um, m., *Usípetes,* a German tribe.
vīgintī, *twenty,* indecl.

EXERCISES.

341. 1. Caesar Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāvit. 2. Helvētiī fīnibus suīs excessērunt. 3. Usipetēs propter dissēnsiōnēs possessiōnibus suīs expulsī sunt. 4. Hostēs Caesarem commeātū prohibuērunt. 5. Hostēs ā mīlitibus nostrīs repulsī sunt. 6. Nihil est hominibus cārius lībertāte. 7. Amplius vīgintī vīcī incenduntur. 8. In eō proeliō minus septingentī mīlitēs occīsī sunt. 9. Plūs quīnque mīlia captīvōrum ā Caesare occīsī sunt. 10. Nōs magnō timōre līberāvistī. 11. Hostēs ā fīnibus nostrīs reppulimus. 12. Quis est melior frātre tuō? 13. Nēmō illōs mīlitēs ab hīs mūnītiōnibus prohibēbit.

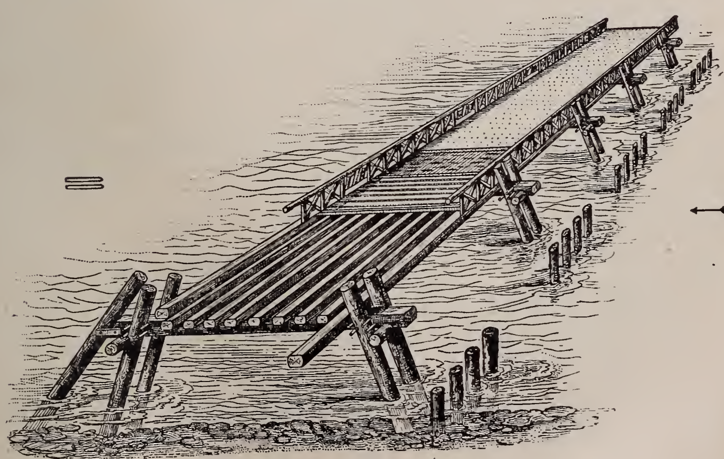
342. 1. The Germans were driven out of their villages. 2. We shall free our fellow-citizens from fear. 3. The Romans drove back the Gauls from the rampart of the camp. 4. We kept the cavalry away from the ford of the river. 5. More than a hundred towns were captured by Caesar. 6. What is nobler than friendship? 7. Is not virtue better than friendship? 8. More than two hundred German horsemen were driven back by us.

343. Defeat of the Helvetii.

Diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.[1] Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent,[2] aliī sē in montem recēpērunt, aliī[3] ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Ad multam noctem[4] ad[5] impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō[6] carrōs objēcerant[7] et ē locō superiōre tēla coniciēbant et nostrōs vulnerābant. Diū cum pugnātum esset,[8] impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt.[9]

---

[1] **pugnatum est**: *the battle raged;* lit. *it was fought;* § 287. [2] **cum non possent**: *when they could not;* § 413. [3] **alii . . . alii**: *some . . . others.* [4] **ad multam noctem**: *till far into the night.* [5] **ad**: *at; near.* [6] **pro vallo**: *as a rampart.* [7] **objecerant**: from *obicio.* [8] **cum pugnatum esset**: for the *cum* clause, see above on *cum possent.* [9] **impedimentis potiti sunt**: *got possession of the baggage;* for the abl. see § 344, 1.



Bridge built by Caesar across the Rhine.

LESSON LIV.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

INSTRUMENTAL USES.

Ablative of Means.

344. The Ablative is used to denote *means* or *instrument;* as, —

sagittā vulnerātus est, *he was wounded by an arrow.*

The Ablative of Means is used with: —

1. **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor**; as, —

   dīvitiīs ūtitur, *he uses his wealth* (lit. *he benefits himself by his wealth*);

   vītā fruitur, *he enjoys life* (lit. *he enjoys himself by life*).

2. With **opus est**, *there is need;* as, —

   duce nōbīs opus est, *we need a leader* (lit. *need is to us*, etc.).

3. With Verbs of *filling* and Adjectives of *plenty;* as, —

   fossās lapidibus complēvērunt, *they filled the trenches with stones.*

Ablative of Cause.

345. The Ablative is used to denote *cause;* as, —

multa glōriae cupiditāte fēcit, *he did many things on account of his love of glory.*

Ablative of Manner.

346. The Ablative modified by an adjective is used to denote *manner;* as, —

magnā gravitāte loquitur, *he speaks with great dignity.*

a. Where there is no adjective, **cum** is used; as, —

cum gravitāte loquitur, *he speaks with dignity.*

347. VOCABULARY.

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead on, impel.*
celeritās, ātis, f., *speed.*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I exhaust.*
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender.*
dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss, damage.*
dignitās, ātis, f., *dignity.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally.*
grātia, ae, f., *influence.*
inopia, ae, f., *lack.*
lacessō, ere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *I harass.*
nocturnus, a, um, *at night.*
opus, n., *need,* indecl.
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *I come, arrive.*
ratiō, ōnis, f., *reason.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I take back;* with reflexive **sē,** *to retreat.*
ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *I use.*

EXERCISES.

348. 1. Helvētiī, inopiā omnium rērum adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 2. Equitēs portīs ēruptiōnem faciunt. 3. Hostēs equitēs nostrōs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. 4. Gallī, vulneribus cōnfectī, sē recēpērunt. 5. Opus est celeritāte. 6. Montem multitūdine hominum complēvērunt. 7. Hōc eā ratiōne fēcit. 8. Tuā grātiā, dignitāte, ope[1] ūtī volō. 9. Eādem celeritāte nocturnō itinere ad mare pervēnit. 10. Gallī cum magnō dētrīmentō repulsī sunt. 11. Helvētiī summā celeritāte ex fīnibus Gallōrum excessērunt. 12. Nāvēs hīs causīs ad terram redīre coāctae sunt.

349. 1. The soldiers had been exhausted by the long march. 2. We shall use the help of the Gauls. 3. The trenches were filled by the soldiers with large stones. 4. We shall need cavalry and infantry. 5. He spoke with great dignity. 6. From fear of danger the envoys withdrew from the camp. 7. The Helvetii were not contented with their narrow boundaries.

---

[1] In Latin the conjunction 'and' is often omitted between the last two members of an enumeration.

LESSON LV.

THE ABLATIVE (Continued).

INSTRUMENTAL USES (Continued).

Ablative of Accompaniment.

350. The Ablative with **cum** is used to denote *accompaniment;* as, —

cum comitibus profectus est, *he set out with his attendants.*

Ablative of Degree of Difference.

351. The Ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison (as **post,** *afterwards;* **ante,** *before;* **superāre,** *surpass*) to denote the *degree of difference;* as, —

tribus pedibus altior, *three feet higher* (lit. *higher by three feet*).

Ablative of Quality.

352. The Ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to denote *quality;* as, —

vir magnā virtūte, *a man of great courage.*

1. The Ablative of Quality may also be used predicatively; as, —

vir est magnā virtūte, *the man is of great courage.*

Ablative of Price.

353. The Ablative of Price is used with verbs of *buying* and *selling;* as, —

servum parvō pretiō ēmit, *he bought the slave for a small price.*

Ablative of Specification.

354. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that *in respect to which* something is or is done; as, —

Helvētiī omnibus Gallīs virtūte praestābant, *the Helvetians surpassed all the Gauls in valor.*

1. The Ablative of Specification is used also with **dignus**, *worthy*, and **indignus**, *unworthy*; as, —

honōre dignī, *worthy of honor.*

355. VOCABULARY.

ante, adv., *before.*
antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I precede.*
auctōritās, ātis, f., *authority, influence.*
dignus, a, um, *worthy.*
fidēs, eī, f., *confidence.*
nihilō, abl., *by nothing.*
paulō, abl., *by a little.*
post, *afterwards.*
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *I loose*, of ships, *unmoor*; **nāvēs solvere**, *set sail.*
superō, 1, *I surpass.*
talentum, ī, n., *a talent* (about $1200).
vēndō, ere, vēndidī, vēnditus, *I sell.*

EXERCISES.

356. 1. Ipse cum equitātū antecēdit. 2. Paucīs ante diēbus profectī sumus. 3. Paulō post nāvēs solvit. 4. Adversum proelium equestre paucīs ante diēbus factum erat. 5. Haec cīvitās erat magnā auctōritāte. 6. Nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur. 7. Hōs agrōs sex talentīs vēndidit. 8. Ille dignus est fidē. 9. Omnēs dignitāte superat. 10. Turris decem pedibus quam mūnītiō altior fuit. 11. Nōnne hīc homō amīcitiā vestrā dignus est? 12. Nēmō tē auctōritāte superat. 13. Gallī cum magnā manū hōc oppidum oppugnāre coepērunt.

357. 1. Caesar set out with four legions. 2. He returned home with his brother. 3. A few years before, Caesar had first come into Gaul. 4. A few years after, he returned to Rome. 5. This plan is much better. 6. He sold this house for ten talents. 7. Are we not worthy of the highest honor? 8. This man surpassed the rest in virtue. 9. The enemy were superior in number.

358. Retreat of the Helvetii.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia[1] CXX superfuērunt[2] eamque tōtam noctem[3] continenter iērunt;[4] dēnique diē quārtō[5] in fīnēs Lingonum pervēnērunt, quoniam et[6] propter vulnera mīlitum et sepultūram occīsōrum[7] nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuerant. Caesar Lingonēs[8] eōs frūmentō[9] aut aliīs rēbus juvāre vetuit. Ipse post trīduum cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

---

[1] **hominum milia**: § 114, *a*; *hominum* is Genitive of the Whole; § 322. [2] **superfuerunt**: from *supersum*. [3] **eam totam noctem**: § 301. [4] **ierunt**: from *eo*. [5] **die quarto**: *on the fourth day*. [6] **et . . . et**: *both . . . and*. [7] **occisorum**: *of the slain*. [8] **Lingones eos juvare vetuit**: *forbade the Lingones to help them*. [9] **frumento, rebus**: § 344.



Slinger (funditor).

LESSON LVI.

ABLATIVE (Continued).

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

359. The Ablative Absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It generally consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle; as, —

> **urbe captā, cīvēs fūgērunt,** *when the city had been captured, the citizens fled* (lit. *the city having been captured*).

1. Instead of a participle we often find an adjective or a noun; as, —

> **vīvō Caesare, rēs pūblica salva erat,** *while Caesar was alive the state was safe* (lit. *Caesar* [*being*] *alive*);
>
> **Pīsōne et Gabiniō cōnsulibus,** *in the consulship of Piso and Gabinius* (lit. *Piso and Gabinius* [*being*] *consuls*).

2. The Ablative Absolute is generally best translated by a subordinate clause, *i.e.* by a clause introduced by *when*, *as*, *since*, *if*, *though*, *etc.*; or by a prepositional phrase (*in*, *during*, *after*, *by*); or by an active participle with its object.

360. VOCABULARY.

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *I collect.*
conjūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
M., abbreviation for **Mārcus, ī,** m., *Marcus* (a man's name).
Messalla, ae, m., *Messalla* (a man's name).
peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*
Pīsō, ōnis, m., *Piso* (a man's name).

EXERCISES.

361. 1. Barbarī, magnā multitūdine peditātūs coāctā,[1] ad castra vēnērunt. 2. Is, M. Messallā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,

---

[1] Avoid translating the Ablative Absolute by the English Nominative Absolute. Find a natural English equivalent.

conjūrātiōnem fēcit. 3. Hostēs, īnsidiīs in silvīs collocātīs, adventum Rōmānōrum exspectābant. 4. Praesidiō quīnque cohortium relīctō, contrā hostem proficīscitur. 5. Mē duce, mīlitēs, agrōs Sēquanōrum vexāvistis et oppida eōrum cēpistis. 6. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar in Britanniam profectus est. 7. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, ab Rhēnō flūmine dēcessit. 8. Conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs mīsērunt. 9. Commissō proeliō, diūtius nostrōrum impetum hostēs sustinēre nōn potuērunt. 10. Hāc magnā classe āmissā, ad ōram Galliae statim rediit.

362. 1. In the consulship of Pompey and Crassus the Germans crossed the Rhine. 2. When these tribes had been overcome, Caesar returned to winter-quarters. 3. In our consulship the Helvetii were driven back and killed. 4. Having taken many towns by storm, this commander was waiting for his fleet. 5. Having heard of the arrival of Marcellus, we sent envoys to him. 6. When all the arms had been collected from this town, he set out for (*in*) the territory of the Ubii (*Ubiī, ōrum*).

LESSON LVII.

ABLATIVE (Continued).

ABLATIVE OF PLACE AND TIME.

(LOCATIVE USES.)

Ablative of Place.

A. *Place where.*

363. The place where is regularly denoted by the *Ablative with the preposition* **in**; as, —

in urbe habitat, *he dwells in the city.*

1. But names of towns — except Singulars of the First and Second Declensions — stand in the Ablative without a preposition; as, —

Carthāginī, *at Carthage;* **Athēnīs**, *at Athens.*

B. *Place from which.*[1]

364. Place from which is regularly denoted by the *Ablative with the preposition* **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**; as, —

ab Italiā profectus est, *he set out from Italy.*

1. But names of towns and **domō**, *from home*, stand in the Ablative without a preposition; as, —

Rōmā profectus est, *he set out from Rome.*

Ablative of Time.

365. The Ablative is used to denote the time *at which* or *within which;* as, —

---

[1] Place from which, though strictly a 'Genuine Ablative' use, is treated here for the sake of convenience.

quārtā hōrā mortuus est, *he died at the fourth hour;*
lūna octō et vīgintī diēbus cursum cōnficit, *the moon completes its orbit within twenty-eight days.*

The Locative.

366. The Locative case occurs: —

1. Regularly in the singular of names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, to denote the place *in which;* as, —

Rōmae, *at Rome;* **Corinthī**, *at Corinth* (see § 29, 3).

2. In a few special words; as, —

domī, *at home;* **humī**, *on the ground.*

367. VOCABULARY.

Aprīlis, e, adj., *of April.*
dēspērō, 1, *I despair.*
Kalendae, ārum, f., *Kalends* (first of the month).
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
tempus, oris, n., *time.*
tertius, a, um, *third.*
trīduum, ī, n., *three days.*
vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (of the night).

368. 1. Athēnīs morābāmur. 2. Rōmae erat magnus tumultus. 3. Rōmā in Galliam contendit. 4. Ā Galliā Rōmam trīduō redībit. 5. Tertiā vigiliā ē castrīs profectus est. 6. Eō tempore mīlitēs dē suā salūte dēspērābant. 7. Kalendīs Aprīlibus hās litterās mīsī. 8. Illā nocte īnsidiās Gallōrum repperērunt. 9. Ego et frāter meus Rōmā Athēnās rediimus.

369. 1. In these places were large forests. 2. He remained one day at Geneva. 3. On that day I saw you and your friends at Avaricum. 4. From Athens we returned to Rome. 5. From Rome we hurried into Gaul. 6. We set out in the first watch. 7. You were consul in that year. 8. Within six years I shall be consul.

370. The Helvetii Surrender to Caesar.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī[1] lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mīsērunt. Caesar eōs[2] in eō locō quō[3] tum erant suum adventum exspectāre jussit. Eō[4] postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs et omnia arma quae habēbant poposcit. Hīs trāditīs,[5] omnēs in dēditiōnem accēpit, eōsque in fīnēs suōs, unde profectī erant, revertī atque oppida vīcōsque,[6] quōs incenderant, restituere jussit.

---

[1] **adducti**: *induced, forced, impelled.* [2] **eos exspectare jussit**: *ordered them to await.* [3] **quo**: *in which.* [4] **eo**: *thither, there;* the adverb. [5] **his traditis**: § 359; *his* refers to arms and hostages. [6] **oppida, vicos**: objects of *restituere.*

LESSON LVIII.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

371. Adjectives, including Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns and Participles, are often used as Substantives in the Plural. The Masculine denotes persons; the Neuter denotes things; as, —

doctī, *learned men;* **nostrī**, *our men;* **parva**, *small things.*

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

372. 1. The Comparative often corresponds to the English Positive with '*rather*,' '*somewhat*,' '*too*'; as, —

senectūs est loquācior, *old age is rather talkative.*

2. So the Superlative often corresponds to the Positive with '*very*'; as, —

fortissimus, *bravest*, or *very brave.*

OTHER PECULIARITIES.

373. Certain Adjectives may be used to denote *a part of an object*, chiefly **extrēmus** (*end of*), **summus** (*top of*), **medius** (*middle of*), **īmus** (*bottom of*);[1] as, —

summus mōns, *the top of the mountain.*

374. VOCABULARY.

abeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *go away.*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe.*
extrēmus, a, um, *extreme*, *end of.*
gravis, e, *heavy*, *difficult.*
hiems, is, f., *winter.*
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *I exhort.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
plērīque, aeque, aque, *most.*
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I advance.*
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, *I answer*, *reply.*

---

[1] In this use the Adjective precedes the Noun.

EXERCISES.

375. 1. Caesar suōs hortātus est. 2. Plērīque haec crēdunt. 3. Mihi pauca respondit. 4. Via gravior erat. 5. Numerus lēgātōrum erat maximus. 6. Usipetēs extrēmā hieme Rhēnum trānsiērunt. 7. Gallī mediā nocte ex castrīs ēgressī sunt. 8. Nostrī ad aggerem prōcessērunt.

376. 1. Our (men)[1] withstood the onset of the barbarians. 2. I said all these (things) in the senate. 3. He remembers many (things).[2] 4. Most (persons) heard this. 5. Our (men) seized the top of the mountain. 6. In the last part of the summer we were informed of these things.[3] 7. The march was somewhat difficult.

---

[1] Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

[2] See § 329, footnote.

[3] The substantive use of neuter pronouns and adjectives is regularly confined to the Nominative and Accusative Cases; **rēs** must be used here.

LESSON LIX.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

377. 1. The Personal Pronouns as subjects of verbs are generally not expressed except for *emphasis*, *contrast*, or *clearness*. Thus ordinarily: —

videō, *I see;* **amat**, *he loves.*

But **ego tē videō, et tū mē vidēs**, *I see you, and you see me.*

2. The Genitives **meī, tuī, nostrī, vestrī**, are used only as Objective Genitives; **nostrum** and **vestrum** as Genitives of the Whole. Thus: —

memor tuī, *mindful of you;*
nēmō vestrum, *no one of you.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

378. The Possessive Pronouns are generally not employed except for the purpose of *clearness*. Thus: —

patrem amō, *I love my father.*
But — **patrem tuum amō**, *I love your father.*

Ipse.

379. 1. **Ipse**, literally *self*, acquires its special force from the context; as, —

eō ipsō diē, *on that very day.*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

380. **Alius**, *another*, is often used correlatively; as, —

aliud loquitur, aliud sentit, *he says one thing, he thinks another.*

So likewise **alter**, *the other;* as, —

alter exercitum perdidit, alter vēndidit, *one ruined the army, the other sold it.*

381. VOCABULARY.

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I yield, withdraw.*
coniciō, ere, conjēcī, conjectus, *I hurl.*
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *I differ.*
exitus, ūs, m., *exit, passage.*
fīdūcia, ae, f., *confidence.*
īnstitūtum, ī, n., *institution.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
mereor, ērī, meritus sum, *I deserve.*
misericordia, ae, f., *pity.*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus, *I press, crowd.*
subeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *I approach.*

EXERCISES.

382. 1. Tua nostrī fīdūcia mihi grāta est. 2. Multī vestrum laudem meritī sunt. 3. Misericordiā vestrī movēbar. 4. Hostēs in exitū portārum sēsē premēbant. 5. Gallī īnstitūtīs atque lēgibus inter sē differunt. 6. Nostrī ipsā multitūdine nāvium perterrēbantur. 7. Ipsa locī nātūra perīculum repellēbat. 8. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit. 9. Hārum fīliārum altera occīsa,[1] altera capta est. 10. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī vāllum subeunt.

383. 1. I was touched by your recollection of me. 2. Part of us went away. 3. Your pity of us touched my father. 4. He was driven out by his own [2] fellow-citizens. 5. They had long contended with [3] each other. 6. We have long contended with each other. 7. Some fought with swords, others with javelins. 8. One was killed, another fled. 9. The one fled, the other was captured.

REVIEW.

384. 1. Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs obsidēs inter sē dare jussit. 2. Eā ipsā nocte hīc nōbilis captīvus ad suōs fūgit. 3. Ā

---

[1] Supply **est** from the following **capta est**.
[2] *his own :* use the proper form of **suus**.
[3] Compare the fifth sentence in the Latin exercise.

suīs interfectus est. 4. Nostrī multitūdine hārum nāvium perterritī sunt. 5. Alius nōs laudābit, alius culpābit. 6. Bonī nōn sunt semper pulchrī. 7. Hae dissēnsiōnēs cīvium nunc multō crēbriōrēs fuērunt. 8. Dē hīs rēbus extrēmā hieme certior factus es. 9. Decem equitēs Rōmānī plūs vīgintī Germānōs ā castrīs reppulērunt. 10. Hīc minus bīduum morātī erāmus. 11. Minimā dīligentiā ūsus es. 12. Agricolae hīs parvīs agrīs contentī nōn erunt.

385. Original Number of the Helvetii and their Allies. The Survivors.

In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae[1] repertae sunt, litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae,[2] in quibus nōminātim ratiō[3] cōnfecta erat eōrum quī arma ferre poterant; et sēparātim puerōrum,[4] senum, mulierumque. Summa[5] erat: Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXII; Tulingōrum, mīlia XXXVI; Latobrīgōrum XIIII; Rauracōrum XXIII. Eōrum,[6] quī domum[7] rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, mīlia CCLVIII abesse reperta sunt.[8]

---

[1] **tabulae**, *lists*. [2] **confectae**, *made out, written;* participle agreeing with *tabulae*. [3] **ratio**: *an account*. [4] **puerorum**, **senum**, **mulierum**: depending on *ratio*, understood. [5] **summa**: *the sum total*. [6] **eorum censu habito**: *when a census had been taken of those;* § 359. [7] **domum**: Accusative of Limit of Motion; § 302, *b*. [8] **abesse reperta sunt**: *were found to be missing*. The greater part of this vast number of missing people had probably perished.

LESSON LX.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

386. The Subjunctive is used in Independent Sentences to express something —

1. **As willed — Volitive Subjunctive;**
2. **As desired — Optative Subjunctive;**
3. **Conceived of as possible — Potential Subjunctive.**

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

387. The Volitive Subjunctive has the following varieties: —

A. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

388. The Hortatory Subjunctive expresses *an exhortation.* This use is confined to the first person plural of the Present. The negative is **nē**. Thus: —

eāmus, *let us go;*
nē dēspērēmus, *let us not despair.*

B. JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

389. The Jussive Subjunctive expresses a *command;* as, —

dīcat, *let him tell.*

1. Negative commands, *i.e. prohibitions*, are usually expressed by means of **nōlī (nōlīte)**, with a following infinitive; as, —

nōlī hōc facere, *don't do this* (lit. *be unwilling to do*)!

390. VOCABULARY.

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I draw near.*
cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, *I settle.*
cūrō, 1, *I care for, take care of.*
dēsistō, ere, dēstitī, *I cease.*
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, mīssus, *I let go.*
disciplīna, ae, f., *discipline.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom.*
nē, *not.*
retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *I retain.*
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *I take.*

EXERCISES.

391. 1. Mōrēs atque disciplīnam majōrum retineāmus! 2. Hanc occāsiōnem nē dīmittāmus! 3. Omnēs proeliō dēsistant! 4. Haec cūrentur! 5. Ille accēdat! 6. Nōlī discēdere! 7. Nōlīte, mīlitēs, officia vestra dēserere! 8. Nēmō incolās hūjus īnsulae lacessat! 9. Nōlī tālia verba probāre! 10. Amīcōrum meminerīmus! 11. Omnēs amīcī meī mē dēfendant! 12. Helvētiī in Galliā nē cōnsīdant! 13. Arma sūmāmus!

392. 1. Let us withstand the onset of the enemy! 2. Let us not abandon our duty! 3. Let Ariovistus return home! 4. Let the Germans not ravage the fields of the Gauls! 5. Let him keep the Germans away from the Rhine! 6. Do not go away! 7. Do not join battle!



Testudo.

LESSON LXI.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. — POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. — THE IMPERATIVE.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

393. The Optative Subjunctive expresses a wish. The negative is **nē**.

1. The Present Tense, often with **utinam**, is used where the wish is conceived of *as possible;* as, —

> **utinam veniat**, *may he come!*
> **dī istaec prohibeant**, *may the gods prevent that!*
> **nē veniant**, *may they not come!*

2. The Imperfect expresses *a regret that something is not so now;* the Pluperfect, that something *was not so in the past.* The Imperfect and Pluperfect are regularly accompanied by **utinam**; as, —

> **utinam istud ex animō dīcerēs**, *would that you were saying that in earnest!* (*i.e.* I regret that you are not saying it in earnest);
> **utinam ne vēnisset**, *would that he had not come.*

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

394. The Potential Subjunctive expresses the ideas conveyed by the English auxiliaries *should, would;* as, —

> **fortūnam facilius reperiās quam retineās**, *you would find Fortune more easily than you would hold her.*

THE IMPERATIVE.

395. The Imperative is used in *commands*, *admonitions*, *entreaties*, *laws*, etc.; as, —

> **ēgredere ex urbe**, *depart from the city;*
> **mihi ignōsce**, *pardon me.*

396. VOCABULARY.

aestās, ātis, f., *summer.*
āvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *I avert.*
cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *I use up.*
dō, dăre, dedī, datus, *I give, render.*
faoilis, e, *easy.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *I know, understand.*
jūs, jūris, n., *right, power.*
opera, ae, f., *assistance.*
patior, ī, passus sum, *I suffer.*
utinam, affirmative particle.
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *I conquer.*

EXERCISES.

397. 1. Haec suspīciō āvertātur! 2. Utinam pater meus haec intellegeret! 3. Utinam hanc aestātem in hīs operibus nē cōnsūmpsissēmus! 4. Illī nē vincant! 5. Nēmō haec supplicia patiātur. 6. Hōc facilius videātur. 7. Auxilium ā tē nōn postulem. 8. Vestrō ducī, mīlitēs, operam date. 9. Cōnsulēs summum jūs habentō. 10. Utinam hī lēgātī discēdant. 11. Quis haec cōnsilia probet? 12. Velim hanc rem melius intellegere. 13. Relinquite hunc locum et domum redīte! 14. Utinam operā tuā ūsus essem!

398. 1. Would that we had better defended the lives and fortunes of our fellow-citizens! 2. May our country not suffer any harm! 3. Would that these soldiers were braver! 4. Would we had not abandoned our duty! 5. What would seem better? 6. I should scarcely believe you. 7. Defend, fellow-citizens, the common safety.

399. The Gauls Complain of Ariovistus's Tyranny and Beg for Caesar's Help.[1]

Bellō[2] Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, lēgātī tōtīus ferē[3] Galliae, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt. Locūtus est

[1] This and the five following passages of connected discourse deal with Caesar's campaign against Ariovistus, which is given in the second half of Book I of Caesar's Commentaries. [2] § 359. [3] **fere:** with *totius.*

prō hīs Dīvitiācus Haeduus atque dē injūriīs Ariovistī, rēgis Germānōrum, questus est. Ille[1] centum et vīgintī mīlia Germānōrum[2] trāns Rhēnum trādūxerat, quī multōs Gallōs ē sēdibus[3] expulerant optimamque partem Galliae occupābant.[4]

---

[1] **ille**: referring to Ariovistus. [2] § 322. [3] § 337. [4] **occupabant**: *were taking possession of.*



A German Body-guard.

LESSON LXII.

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

400. The Subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, and **quō** is used to express Purpose; as, —

edimus, ut vīvāmus, *we eat that we may live.*

adjūtā mē quō hōc fīat facilius, *help me, in order that this may be done more easily.*

portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī injūriam acciperent, *he closed the gates, lest the townspeople should receive any injury.*

a. A Relative Pronoun (**quī**) or Relative Adverb (**ubi**, **unde**, **quō**) is frequently used to introduce a Purpose Clause; as, —

Helvētiī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīcerent, *the Helvetii sent envoys to say* (lit. *who should say*).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

401. 1. In all dependent clauses, the tenses of the Subjunctive usually conform to the so-called 'Sequence of Tenses.' By the Sequence of Tenses, Principal Tenses of the Indicative are followed by Principal Tenses of the Subjunctive, Historical by Historical.

2. The Principal Tenses of the Indicative are: Present, Future, Present Perfect (p. 60, footnote), Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses are: Imperfect, Historical Perfect (p. 60, footnote), Pluperfect.

3. In the Subjunctive the Present and Perfect are Principal tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect, Historical.

Examples of Sequence.

PRINCIPAL SEQUENCE, —

videō quid faciās, *I see what you are doing.*
vidēbō quid faciās, *I shall see what you are doing.*
vīderō quid faciās, *I shall have seen what you are doing.*
videō quid fēcerīs, *I see what you have done.*
vidēbō quid fēcerīs, *I shall see what you have done.*
vīderō quid fēcerīs, *I shall have seen what you have done.*

HISTORICAL SEQUENCE, —

vidēbam quid facerēs, *I saw what you were doing.*
vīdī quid facerēs, *I saw what you were doing.*
vīderam quid facerēs, *I had seen what you were doing.*
vidēbam quid fēcissēs, *I saw what you had done.*
vīdī quid fēcissēs, *I saw what you had done.*
vīderam quid fēcissēs, *I had seen what you had done.*

4. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive denote incomplete action, the Perfect and Pluperfect completed action.

402. VOCABULARY.

Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania*, a district of Gaul.
conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *I unite.*
Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus* (a man's name).
exsistō, ere, exstitī, *I arise.*
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt.*
nē, *lest, that . . . not.*
quō, *in order that;* regularly used with Comparatives.
remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *I remain.*
ut, *that, in order that.*

EXERCISES.

403. 1. Crassus in Aquītāniam proficīscitur, nē tantae nātiōnēs conjungantur. 2. Locum castrīs idōneum dēlēgit nē commeātū prohibērētur. 3. Caesar cum equitātū proficīscitur nē quis[1] mōtus exsistat. 4. Nōnnūllī remanēbant ut suspīciōnem timōris vītārent. 5. Quō iter expedītius faceret,

[1] In Latin we regularly find **nē quis** = *in order that no (one)*; **nē ūllus** = *in order that no, etc.*

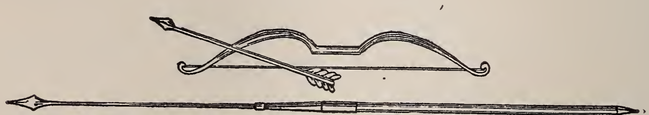
impedīmenta relīquit. 6. Lēgātōs mīsit quī haec nūntiārent. 7. Castra in locīs superiōribus posuit nē quis[1] ea oppugnāret. 8. Ūnam legiōnem relīquit, quae castra dēfenderet. 9. Barbarōs expulimus ut vōs timōre et perīculīs līberārēmus. 10. Oppidum mūnīmus quō cīvēs hostibus facilius resistant.

404. 1. We did these (things) that we might be free. 2. We do these (things) that we may be free. 3. Caesar chose men to fortify the camp. 4. We put Galba in charge of the captives in order that none[2] should flee. 5. We fortified the camp with a trench in order that we might defend it. 6. Caesar joined battle, in order that greater armies might not assemble.

---

[1] In Latin we regularly find **nē quis** = *in order that no* (*one*); **nē ūllus** = *in order that no, etc.*

[2] Translate, *lest any.*



Bow, Arrow, and Javelin (arcus, sagitta, pilum).

LESSON LXIII.

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. — RESULT CLAUSES. — CAUSAL CLAUSES.

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

405. 1. A relative clause used to *express some quality or characteristic of an indefinite or general antecedent* is called a Clause of Characteristic, and stands in the Subjunctive; as, —

> **multa sunt, quae mentem acuant**, *there are many things which sharpen the wits.*

2. Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such expressions as **sunt quī**, *there are (some) who;* **nēmō est quī**, *there is no one who;* **ūnus est quī**, *there is only one who; etc.* Thus: —

> **sunt quī dīcant**, *there are (some) who say;*
> **nēmō est quī putet**, *there is nobody who thinks.*

RESULT CLAUSES.

406. The Subjunctive with **ut, ut nōn**, is used to denote Result; as, —

> **mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent**, *a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could stop them.*

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

407. 1. Causal Clauses introduced by **quod, quia, quoniam**, take the Indicative when the reason is *that of the writer or speaker;* the Subjunctive when the reason is viewed *as that of another.* Thus: —

eōs timeō quod diffīdō cōpiīs nostris, *I fear them, because I distrust our troops.*

accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem, *he was arraigned on the ground that he was corrupting the young.* (Here the reason is not that of the writer but of the accuser. Hence the Subjunctive.)

2. **Cum** causal takes the Subjunctive ; as, —

quae cum ita sint, *since this is so.*

408. VOCABULARY.

accidit, ere, accidit, *it happens.*
appropinquō, 1, *I approach.*
barbarus, a, um, *barbarous.*
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change.*
cōnsistō, ere, cōnstitī, *I consist.*
cum, *because, since.*
dēspiciō, ere, exī, ectus, *I despise.*
jūrō, 1, *I swear, take oath.*
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *I blockade.*
paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness, small number.*
quod, *because.*
quoniam, *inasmuch as*, conj.
renovō, 1, *I renew.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *I know.*
sublevō, 1, *I relieve.*
tam, *so* (of degree).
ūnus, a, um, *alone.*

EXERCISES.

409. 1. Nēmō erat quī nōn jūrāret. 2. Multī sunt quī haec sciant. 3. Nūlla via erat quae nōn obsidērētur. 4. Caesaris adventū tanta commūtātiō rērum facta est ut nostrī proelium renovārent. 5. Nōn tam barbarus sum, ut haec nōn sciam. 6. Caesar Gallōs accūsat quod ab eīs nōn sublevētur. 7. Hōc acciderat quod Gallī legiōnem nostram propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant. 8. Quoniam Germānī appropinquant, castra movēbimus. 9. Hostēs ācriter pugnāvērunt, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. 10. Nēmō erat quī redīre vellet. 11. Caesar angustiās obsēderat, ut hostēs ex fīnibus suīs exīre nōn possent.

410. 1. Who is there that[1] says these (things)? 2. These soldiers were so brave that they feared no one. 3. The enemy were so terrified that they fled into the forests. 4. This place was such that our (men) could easily defend it. 5. Inasmuch as these (things) are so, we shall remain in this place. 6. Because no one else was present, he accused us. 7. He accused you because (= on the ground that) you did not resist the enemy.

411. Caesar Decides that Ariovistus and the Germans are a Menace to Roman Interests in Gaul.

Hīs verbīs[2] lēgātōrum audītīs, Caesar animōs Gallōrum cōnfīrmāvit atque eīs auxilium suum pollicitus est. Hāc ōrātiōne[2] habitā, concilium dīmīsit. Eī[3] vērō vidēbātur perīculōsum, sī plūrēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent[4] et magna eōrum multitūdō in Galliam venīret.[4] Praetereā Ariovistus ipse tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut[5] nōn ferendus vidērētur. Itaque Caesar ad eum lēgātōs mittere cōnstituit, quī colloquium postulārent.[6]

---

[1] Observe that this is the relative *that* = *who*. [2] § 359. [3] **Ei**: dative; join with *periculosum*; § 314. [4] **transirent**, **veniret**: *should cross*; *should come*. [5] **ut . . . videretur**: *that he seemed unbearable* (lit. *not to be borne*); *ferendus* is the gerundive. For the subjunctive, see § 406. [6] § 400, *a*.

LESSON LXIV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac*, etc.

412. 1. **Postquam**, *after;* **ut, ubi**, *when;* **simul ac** (**simul atque**), *as soon as*, referring *to a single past occurrence*, take the Perfect Indicative; as, —

> **postquam audīvit vīcisse suōs, 'satis' inquit 'vīxī,'** *after he heard that his troops had conquered, he said, 'I have lived enough.'*

TEMPORAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *cum.*

413. Cum temporal ('when'), referring to the past, takes the Indicative (Imperfect, Historical Perfect, or Pluperfect) to denote *the point of time at which* something occurs; the Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect) to denote *the situation or circumstances under which* something occurs; as, —

> **erās cōnsul, cum mea domus ārdēbat**, *you were consul at the time when my house burned up;*
> **cum hōc dīxisset, omnēs abiērunt**, *when he had said this, all went away.*

414. Cum temporal, referring to the Present or Future, takes the Indicative; as, —

> **cum tē videō, semper gaudeō**, *when I see you, I am always glad.*

415. VOCABULARY.

animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *I notice.*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *I learn, become acquainted with.*
comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, *I find out.*
cum, *when,* conj.
ēiciō, ere, ējēcī, ējectus, *I thrust out;* **sē ēicere,** *rush forth.*
exeō, īre, iī, exitūrus, *I go out, go forth.*
factiō, ōnis, f., *faction.*
postquam, *after,* conj.
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *I inquire.*
simul ac (atque), *as soon as.*
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I withdraw.*
ubi, *when.*

EXERCISES.

416. 1. Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar cōpiās suās in collem proximum subdūxit. 2. Caesar ubi id comperit, sē in Galliam recēpit. 3. Simul ac tē vīdī, hōc sēnsī. 4. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, duae factiōnēs erant. 5. Caesar cum ex captīvīs quaereret, hanc causam reperiēbat. 6. Cum ad id oppidum accessisset, puerī mulierēsque pācem petīvērunt. 7. Ut equitātus noster sē in agrōs ējēcit, hostēs ex silvīs exībant. 8. Cum veniēs, cognōscēs. 9. Postquam amīcōs tuōs ibi vīdī, ad tē rediī. 10. Eō annō cum Cicerō cōnsul erat hae īnsidiae compertae sunt.

417. 1. After Caesar made the bridge, he marched into Germany. 2. When he heard these (things), he went away. 3. As soon as I saw you, I entreated your help. 4. On that day when you spoke in the senate, very many were present. 5. When the Gauls had seen our (men), they fled into the forests.

LESSON LXV.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (Continued).

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *dum* AND *dōnec*.

418. 1. **Dum**, *while*, takes the Present Indicative with the force of an Imperfect; as,—

dum pugnat, sagittā ictus est, *while he was fighting, he was struck by an arrow.*

2. **Dum** and **dōnec**, *as long as*, take the Indicative; as,—

dum anima est, spēs est, *as long as there is life, there is hope.*

3. **Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad**, *until*, take—

a. The Indicative, to denote *an actual event;* as,—

dōnec rediit, fuit silentium, *there was silence till he came.*

b The Subjunctive, to denote *expectancy;* as,—

exspectāvit Caesar dum nāvēs convenīrent, *Caesar waited for the ships to assemble.*

419 VOCABULARY.

adversārius, iī, m., *adversary.*
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *I do.*
commūniō, īre, īvī, iī, ītus, *strongly fortify.*
Domitius, ī (iī), m., *Domitius* (a man's name).
dōnec, *until.*
dum, *while; as long as; until.*
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*
Massilia, ae, f., *Marseilles.*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *I accomplish.*
silentium, ī (iī), n., *silence.*
tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*

EXERCISES.

420. 1. Dum haec inter eōs aguntur, Domitius Massiliam pervēnit. 2. Huic magistrātuī restitī, dum potuī. 3. Dōnec rediistī, nōs ibi remānsimus. 4. Caesar exspectāvit dum haec

mandāta ad hostēs perferrentur. 5. Exspectābimus dum cēterī amīcī nostrī accēdant. 6. Exspectāvī dum cēterī amīcī meī accessērunt. 7. Dum adversāriī castra commūniunt, collem occupāvimus.

421. 1. While the troops were assembling, Caesar consulted with the tribunes. 2. As long as Caesar was in Gaul, he was waging war. 3. We waited six days till you should come. 4. While these things were being accomplished, we withdrew. 5. As long as they remain here, they are safe (**incolumis, e**).

422. Ariovistus Rejects the Proposal for a Conference.— Caesar's Demands.

Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: "Quid negōtī[1] Caesarī[2] aut populō Rōmānō[2] est in meā Galliā, quam bellō[3] vīcī? Sī quid[4] Caesar vult, ad mē veniat![5] Ad eum nōn ībō." Hīs respōnsīs[6] ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mīsit: "Nōlī[7] plūrēs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcere! Redde etiam Gallīs obsidēs quōs habēs! Nisi haec faciēs, injūriās Gallōrum ulcīscar."

---

[1] **quid negoti**: *what business?* lit. *what of business?* § 322. [2] § 312. [3] § 344. [4] **quid**: *anything;* the indefinite pronoun. [5] § 389. [6] § 359. [7] **noli traducere**: *do not lead!* § 389, 1.

LESSON LXVI.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

423. A Substantive Clause is one which serves as the Subject or Object of a verb, or denotes some other case relation.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEVELOPED FROM THE VOLITIVE.

424. The Subjunctive with **ut** and **nē** is used in Substantive Clauses developed from the Volitive after verbs signifying *to admonish*, *request*, *command*, *grant*, *resolve*, and the like; as,—

> **postulō ut fīat**, *I demand that it be done* (dependent form of the Jussive **fīat**, *let it be done!*);
> **ōrat nē abeās**, *he begs that you will not go away;*
> **huic concēdō, ut ea praetereat**, *I allow him to pass that by;*
> **dēcrēvit senātus ut Opīmius vidēret**, *the senate decreed that Opimius should see to it.*

425. The Subjunctive with **nē**, **quōminus**, and **quīn** is used in Substantive Clauses after verbs of hindering; as,—

> **nē lūstrum perficeret, mors prohibuit**, *death prevented him from finishing the lustrum.*
> **prohibuit quōminus in ūnum coīrent**, *he prevented them from coming together.*

426. VOCABULARY.

Bōjī, ōrum, m. pl., *Boji*, an ancient tribe.
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *I grant.*
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, *I decree.*
imperō, 1, *I command.*
itaque, *accordingly.*
omnīnō, *at all* (with negatives).
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I permit.*
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *I enjoin.*
quōminus, *from* (with verbs of hindering).
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *I return, give back.*
reiciō, ere, rejēcī, rejectus, *I hurl back.*
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *I restore.*
sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *I seek.*
trānsportō, 1, *I transport.*

EXERCISES.

427. 1. Equitibus imperat ut hostibus terrōrem īnferant. 2. Itaque Caesar suīs praecēpit nē ūllum omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. 3. Hās cīvitātēs hortātur, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur. 4. Haeduīs concessit ut Bōjōs in fīnibus suīs collocārent. 5. Sēquanīs permīsit ut hōs obsidēs redderent. 6. Dēcrēvimus ut hae legiōnēs Rhēnum trānsportārentur. 7. Eōs prohibuī nē excēderent. 8. Mē prohibuit quōminus haec restituerem. 9. Mihi persuāsit ut Massiliae manērem. 10. Cicerō senātum monuit nē haec perīcula neglegeret. 11. Suīs praecēpit ut proelium statim committerent.

428. 1. I commanded the soldiers[1] to attack this town. 2. Caesar commands the soldiers[1] to attack this town. 3. He commands them[1] not to cross the river. 4. Ariovistus permitted his cavalry[1] to ravage the fields of the Gauls. 5. The senate decreed that the soldiers should march forth. 6. We hindered the enemy from crossing this river.

---

[1] Use the Dative.

LESSON LXVII.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES (Continued).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEVELOPED FROM THE OPTATIVE.

429. The Subjunctive with **ut** and **nē** is used in Substantive Clauses developed from the Optative. Thus: —

1. With verbs of *wishing* and *desiring*, especially **optō, volō, mālō**; as, —

> **optō ut in hōc conciliō nēmō improbus reperiātur,** *I hope that in this council no bad man may be found* (here **ut reperiātur** represents a simple optative of direct statement, *viz.* **nēmō improbus reperiātur**, *may no bad man be found!*).

2. With verbs of *fearing* (**timeō, metuō, vereor**). Here **nē** means *that, lest;* and **ut** means *that not;* as, —

> **timeō nē veniat,** *I fear that he will come* (originally: *may he not come! I'm afraid* [*he will*]);
> **timeō ut veniat,** *I fear that he will not come* (originally: *may he come! I'm afraid* [*he won't*]).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT.

430. The Subjunctive with **ut** and **ut nōn** is used in Substantive Clauses of Result. Thus: —

1. As object clauses after verbs of *doing, accomplishing.* Thus: —

> **gravitās perīculī facit ut auxiliō egeāmus,** *the seriousness of the danger makes us need aid* (lit. *makes that we need*).

2. As the subject of impersonal verbs; as, —

> **ex quō efficitur, ut voluptās nōn sit summum bonum,** *from which it follows that pleasure is not the greatest good.*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

431. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions after verbs of *asking*, *inquiring*, and the like.

Like Direct Questions, Indirect Questions may be introduced —

a. By Interrogative Pronouns (*who, what*) or Adverbs (*where, when, how, etc.*); as, —

dīc mihi ubi fuerīs, quid fēcerīs, *tell me where you were, what you did.*

b. By **num** or **-nē**, without distinction of meaning; as, —

quaesīvit num salvum esset scūtum, or **salvumne esset scūtum**, *he asked whether his shield was safe.*

432. VOCABULARY.

contrōversia, ae, f., *controversy.*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *I lead forth.*
ita, *so* (of manner).
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*
optō, 1, *I desire.*
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., *speech.*
plēbs, is, f., *common people.*
praetereā, *besides.*
prīmō, *first, firstly.*
rescindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *I tear down.*
sīc, *so* (of manner).
tergum, ī, n., *back.*
vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *I turn*; **terga vertere**, *flee.*

EXERCISES.

433. 1. Optō ut haec ōrātiō plēbī placeat. 2. Optāmus nē ūllās contrōversiās habeāmus. 3. Praetereā verēbātur nē hostēs pontem rescinderent. 4. Veritus sum ut legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūcerentur. 5. Ita factum est ut hostēs statim terga verterent. 6. Sīc effēcit ut rēgem in potestāte suā habēret. 7. Eādem nocte accidit ut lūna plēna esset. 8. Ab hīs quaesīvit quae et quantae cīvitātēs in armīs essent. 9. Prīmō ā tē quaerō hūjusne lēgātiōnis prīnceps sīs. 10. Optō nē mē hīc inveniat. 11. Factum est ut eō diē in urbe remānsisset.

12. Eum rogāvī quid fēcisset. 13. Veritus sum ut hōc perīculum ā cīvibus meīs āverterētur.

434. 1. I fear that our (men) will flee. 2. Caesar feared that his (men) would flee. 3. We fear that the soldiers will not withstand the onset of the barbarians. 4. We desire that you may be free. 5. It happened that ships were lacking. 6. We brought it about that you were informed of these things. 7. I asked the envoys what they wished. 8. I asked them whether the Germans had crossed the Rhine.

REVIEW.

435. 1. Nōlīte haec facere! 2. Fīliī mandāta patris suī perficiant! 3. Timor mentēs vestrās nē occupet! 4. Utinam tē vīdissem! 5. Utinam hostēs nē adessent! 6. Nēmō haec crēdat. 7. Proficīscere ex hāc urbe! 8. Multōs labōrēs passus sum ut tē dēfenderem. 9. Hīc remānsī, quō auxiliō ejus diūtius ūterer. 10. Castella ibi collocāvit nē Gallī suōs circumvenīre possent. 11. Quis est quī haec dīcere audeat? 12. Amīcī meī tantā sunt dīligentiā ut nihil neglegant. 13. Hostēs simul atque signa nostra vīdērunt nūntiōs mīsērunt, quī pācem peterent.

436. **Ariovistus's Reply to Caesar.**

"Nōn meā sponte[1] Rhēnum trānsiī, neque sine magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque domum relīquī. Sēdēs, quās in Galliā habēmus, nōbīs ā Gallīs[2] ipsīs concessae sunt. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī ē fīnibus[3] suae prōvinciae[4] ēgressus est. Quid vīs aut cūr in meās possessiōnēs vēnistī? Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum ex hīs regiōnibus dēdūcēs, tē nōn prō amīcō[5] sed prō hoste[5] habēbō."

---

[1] **mea sponte**: *of my own accord.* [2] § 338. [3] § 337. [4] **suae provinciae**: *of their province, i.e.* the Roman province in southern Gaul. [5] **pro amico, pro hoste**: *as a friend, as an enemy;* lit. *for a friend, for an enemy.*

LESSON LXVIII.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.—CLAUSES WITH *quamquam*.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

437. Conditional Sentences are complex sentences consisting of two parts, the Protasis (or *condition*), usually introduced by **sī**, *if*, or **nisi**, *unless*, and the Apodosis (or *conclusion*). There are three types of Conditional Sentences: —

438. First Type. — Simple Conditions (Nothing implied as to the Reality of the Supposed Case).

In Simple Conditions the Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis; as, —

> **sī hōc dīcis, errās,** *if you say this, you are mistaken ;*
> **sī hōc dīxistī, errāvistī,** *if you said this, you were mistaken.*

439. Second Type. — 'Should' . . . 'Would' Conditions.

In 'Should' . . . 'Would' Conditions the Subjunctive (Present or Perfect) is used in both Protasis and Apodosis; as, —

> **sī hōc dīcās, errēs,** *if you should say this, you would be mistaken.*

440. Third Type. — Conditions Contrary to Fact.

In Conditions Contrary to Fact, the Subjunctive is used in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring *to present time*, the Pluperfect *to past ;* as, —

> **sī amīcus meus adesset, gaudērem,** *if my friend were here, I should rejoice.*
> **sī hōc dīxissēs, errāvissēs,** *if you had said this, you would have been mistaken.*

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *quamquam*, *cum*, *although*.

441. 1. **Quamquam**, *although*, is followed by the Indicative; as,—

> **quamquam festīnās, nōn est mora longa**, *although you are in haste, the delay is not long.*

2. **Cum**, *although*, is followed by the Subjunctive; as,—

> **mē nōn adjūvit, cum posset**, *he did not help me, though he was able.*

442. VOCABULARY.

animus, ī, m., *soul, heart.*
Atticus, ī, m., *Atticus*, the friend of Cicero.
cum, *though.*
honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
līber, era, erum, *free.*
mandō, 1, *I assign.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
nisi, *unless.*
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, *I overwhelm.*
pateō, ēre, patuī, *lie open.*
prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *I provide, take care.*
quamquam, *although.*
valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *avail, prevail.*
vīs (vis), f., *violence;* pl., **vīrēs, ium**, *strength.*

EXERCISES.

443. 1. Mors nōn est timenda, si animus immortālis est. 2. Sī vim facere cōnābiminī, vōs prohibēbō. 3. Sī ille nōbīs hōc negōtium mandet, quid respondeās? 4. Sī auctōritās mea valuisset, nōs nunc līberī essēmus. 5. Rēs pūblica oppressa esset, nisi cōnsul prōvīdisset. 6. Sī haec cōnsilia probārēs, laetus essem. 7. Atticus honōrēs nōn petiit, cum eī patērent. 8. Rōmānī, quamquam vulneribus cōnfectī erant, impetum hostium sustinēbant. 9. Sī ā castellō discesseris, ab hostibus interficiēris. 10. Nisi vēnissēs, omnia amīsissēmus.

444. 1. If the soldiers are of good heart,[1] there is hope of victory. 2. If you come[2] to Rome, you will see me. 3. If

---

[1] § 352. [2] Observe that *come* really equals *shall come*. Hence the future must be used. In conditional sentences the English present often has the force of the future, and must be so rendered in Latin.

you should come to Rome, you would see us. 4. If you had told me this, I should not have set out. 5. If our fleet were at hand, we should wish nothing else. 6. Although boats were lacking, Caesar decided to cross the Rhine. 7. Though no one is here, I shall remain.

LESSON LXIX.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*).

445. When the language or thought of any person is quoted without change, it is called Direct Discourse; as, —

Caesar said, 'The die is cast.'

When, on the other hand, one's language or thought is made to depend upon a verb of *saying*, *thinking*, *etc.*, that is called Indirect Discourse; as, —

Caesar said that the die was cast;
Caesar thought that his troops were victorious.

MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

446. Declarative Sentences upon becoming Indirect change their main clause to the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive; as, —

dīxerunt sē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās petere vellent, *they said they had* (lit. *said themselves to have*) *certain things which they wished to request.* (Direct: **habēmus quāsdam rēs quās petere volumus.**)

TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

A. Tenses of the Infinitive.

447. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time, not absolutely, but *with reference to the verb on which they depend.* Thus: —

a. The Present Infinitive represents an act as occurring *at the same time with* the time of the verb on which it depends; as, —

dīcit sē facere, *he says he is doing* (lit. *says himself to do*);
dīxit sē facere, *he said he was doing* (lit. *said himself to do*).

b. The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as occurring *before* the time of the verb on which it depends; as, —

dīcit sē fēcisse, *he says he has done* (lit. *says himself to have done*);
dīxit sē fēcisse, *he said he had done* (lit. *said himself to have done*).

c. The Future Infinitive represents an act as occurring *after* that of the verb on which it depends; as, —

dīcit sē factūrum esse, *he says he will do* (lit. *says himself to be about to do*);
dīxit sē factūrum esse, *he said he would do* (lit. *said himself to be about to do*).

B. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

448. These follow the regular principle for the Sequence of Tenses, being Principal, if the verb of *saying* is Principal; Historical, if it is Historical; as, —

dīcit sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī vēnerint, *he says he sees the envoys who have come;*
dīxit sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī vēnissent, *he said he saw the envoys who had come.*

449. VOCABULARY.

adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *I arrive.*
arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *I consider.*
incolō, ere, uī, cultus, *I inhabit.*
īnferior, ius, *inferior* (§ 102, 2).
īnfīrmus, a, um, *weak.*
modo, *just, just now.*
neque (nec), *nor.*
onerārius, a, um, *burden-bearing;* **nāvēs onerāriae,** *transports.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *I rout, defeat.*
posterus, a, um, *following* (§ 102, 2).
putō, 1, *I think.*

EXERCISES.

450. 1. Exīstimō hās legiōnēs, quae modo advēnerint, īnfīrmās esse. 2. Neque arbitror hostēs sine injūriā trānsitūrōs esse. 3. Intellegimus maximās nātiōnēs ā Caesare pulsās esse. 4. Caesar intellēxit cōpiās quās habēret nōn esse īnferiōrēs. 5. Num putāvistis eōs quī hōs agrōs incolerent discessūrōs esse? 6. Posterō diē Caesar certior factus est nāvēs onerāriās, quās coēgisset, captās esse. 7. Nūntius dīxit montem, quem Caesar occupārī voluisset, ab hostibus tenērī. 8. Nēmō putat hōc oppidum expugnārī posse. 9. Caesar arbitrābātur hās cīvitātēs sibi amīcās esse. 10. Dīxī eōs, quī hanc īnsulam incoluissent, discessisse.

451. 1. It is reported that the Gauls are fortifying the hill which they have seized. 2. It is reported that the Gauls will fortify the hill which they have seized. 3. It is reported that the Gauls have fortified the hill which they have seized. 4. It was reported that the Gauls were fortifying the hill which they had seized. 5. It was reported that the Gauls would fortify the hill which they had seized. 6. It was reported that the Gauls had fortified the hill which they had seized.

452. The Germans and Romans Meet in Battle.

Cum Ariovistus postulāta Caesaris respuisset,[1] Caesar potestātem pugnandī[2] eī dare cōnstituit. Itaque, triplicī aciē[3] īnstrūctā, ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs[4] ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt. Ita ācriter nostrī in hostēs, signō[3] datō, impetum fēcērunt itaque[5] celeriter hostēs prōcurrērunt, ut nostrī pīlīs[6] ūtī nōn possent[7] et gladiīs[8] pugnāre cōgerentur.[7]

---

[1] § 413. [2] **pugnandi**: the gerund, dependent on *potestatem*. [3] § 359. [4] § 337. [5] **itaque celeriter**: *and so swiftly*; **itaque** = *et ita*. [6] § 344, 1. [7] § 406. [8] § 344.

LESSON LXX.

THE INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

453. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs; as, —

> **dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī**, *it is sweet and noble to die for one's country.*

454. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Object of many verbs, particularly after —

> **volō, mālō, nōlō**; **dēbeō**, *ought*; **audeō**, *dare*; **statuō**, *decide, etc.*

INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

455. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs; as, —

> **nihil in bellō oportet contemnī**, *nothing ought to be despised in war* (lit. *nothing to be despised, is fitting*).

456. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as Object after many verbs. Thus: —

a. With verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like. This is the regular construction of Principal Clauses of Indirect Discourse, and has received full illustration in the preceding lesson.

b. Also with **jubeō**, *order*, and **vetō**, *forbid*; as, —

> **Caesar mīlitēs pontem facere jussit**, *Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a bridge.*

457. VOCABULARY.

comparō, 1, *I get ready.*
cōnstat, stāre, stitit, *it is evident.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *I distribute.*
jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussus, *I order.*
lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
licet, ēre, licuit, *it is permitted.*
nancīscor, ī, nactus sum, *I procure.*
necesse est, *it is necessary.*
oportet, *it behooves; it is fitting.*
opus est, *it is necessary.*
ōrdō, inis, m., *rank.*
prō, prep. with abl., *for*, *in behalf of.*
servō, 1, *I preserve.*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *I decide.*

EXERCISES.

458. 1. Opus est cōpiam frūmentī nancīscī. 2. Necesse est castra vāllō mūnīre. 3. Nōn licet in urbem revertī. 4. Gallia lībera esse dēbet. 5. Statuī praesidia dispōnere. 6. Cōnstat magnum numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse. 7. Hōs vīcōs incendī oportet. 8. Caesar mīlitēs jussit ōrdinēs servāre. 9. Jussit nāvēs comparārī. 10. Hostēs ex omnibus partibus lapidēs in vāllum conicere. 11. Hae legiōnēs ex hībernīs ēgredī nōn ausae sunt. 12. Officium est mīlitum Rōmānōrum prō imperātōre et patriā fortiter pugnāre. 13. Imperātor nōs jussit agrōs Sēquanōrum vāstāre.

459. 1. It was necessary to do many (things) at the same time. 2. It is necessary to be brave in battle. 3. We wish to be brave. 4. Endeavor to be good. 5. It behooves us to set out at once. 6. It is necessary (for) us to fortify this camp. 7. It behooves us to be brave. 8. I ordered you to summon the tribunes. 9. We ordered the messengers to be dismissed.

LESSON LXXI.

PARTICIPLES.

460. 1. Tenses of the Participle. The tenses of the Participle express time, not absolutely, but with reference to the verb upon which the Participle depends.

a. The Present Participle denotes action occurring *at the same time with* that of the verb. Thus: —

> **audiō tē loquentem**, *I hear you speaking* (*i.e. you are speaking and I hear you*);
> **audiēbam tē loquentem**, *I heard you speaking* (*i.e. you were speaking, and I heard you*);
> **audiam tē loquentem**, *I shall hear you speaking* (*i.e. you will be speaking and I shall hear you*).

b. The Perfect Passive Participle denotes action occurring *before* that of the verb. Thus: —

> **locūtus taceō**, *having spoken I am silent* (*i.e. I have spoken and am silent*);
> **locūtus tacuī**, *having spoken, I was silent* (*i.e. I spoke and then became silent*);
> **locūtus tacēbō**, *having spoken, I shall become silent* (*i.e. I shall speak and then become silent*).

c. The Future Participle, as a rule, is not used except in the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

d. The **actual** time of the action of a participle, therefore, is determined entirely by the finite verb with which it is connected.

2. Participles are often equivalent to an English subordinate clause, relative, temporal, causal, conditional, *etc.*; as, —

> **omne malum nāscēns facile opprimitur**, *every evil is easily crushed at birth;*
> **mente ūtī nōn possumus, cibō et pōtiōne complētī**, *if gorged with food and drink, we cannot use our intellects.*

3. Often, too, the participle is equivalent to a coördinate clause; as,—

Ahāla Maelium occupātum interēmit, *Ahala surprised and killed Maelius* (lit. *killed Maelius having been surprised*).

4. Participles, being Adjectives, agree with their nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

461. **VOCABULARY.**

cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, hazard.*
cernō, ere, *I perceive.*
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *I see.*
experior, īrī, pertus sum, *I try, test.*
labōrō, 1, *I toil;* in battle, *be hard pressed.*
mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*
oculus, ī, m., *eye.*
persequor, ī, secūtus sum, *I follow up.*
submittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *I send, despatch.*
tueor, ērī, *I guard, watch.*

EXERCISES.

462. 1. Eīs, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexit, subsidium submīsit. 2. Virtūtem vestram multīs proeliīs expertus, vōs nunc ad aliōs cāsūs vocō. 3. Oculus sē nōn vidēns alia cernit. 4. Caesar hōs pulsōs persequitur. 5. Turrim mīlitibus tuendam trādidit. 6. Mīlitēs jam vulneribus cōnfectōs, bonō animō esse jubet. 7. Nostrī hostīs ex castrīs ēgredientēs adortī sunt. 8. Hīc rēx ā populō ex urbe ējectus, cum exercitū rediit. 9. Īnsidiās veritus dēcessit. 10. Hostēs castra minōra adorientēs vīdī.

463. 1. This soldier was killed (while) fighting in the first line of battle. 2. (Though) exhausted with many wounds, we did not abandon our leader. 3. When he had been summoned, he came at once. 4. We put to flight the cavalry (who had been) driven back. 5. Caesar left these captives to be guarded.

464. Defeat of the Germans and Flight of Ariovistus.

Cum diū pugnātum esset,[1] omnēs hostēs terga[2] vertērunt neque[3] prius[4] fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen[5] Rhēnum, quī circiter quīnque mīlia[6] passuum[7] ex eō locō aberat pervēnērunt. Ibi paucī trānāre contendērunt aut, lintribus[8] inventīs, salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī, nāviculam[9] dēligātam ad rīpam nactus,[10] eā[11] profūgit. Equitēs nostrī, reliquōs[12] omnēs cōnsecūtī, interfēcērunt. Hōc proeliō[8] nūntiātō, multī aliī Germānī, quī ad rīpam convēnerant atque flūmen trānsīre parābant, domōs[13] rediērunt.

---

[1] § 413. [2] **terga verterunt**: lit. *turned their backs, i.e. fled.* [3] **neque destiterunt**: *and did not cease.* [4] **prius . . . quam**: = *priusquam.* [5] **ad flumen Rhenum**: with *pervenerunt.* [6] § 301. [7] § 322. [8] § 359. [9] **naviculam**: object of *nactus.* [10] **nactus**: from *nanciscor.* [11] **ea**: referring to *naviculam.* [12] **reliquos omnes**: object both of *consecuti* and of *interfecerunt.* [13] § 302, *b.*

LESSON LXXII.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.—SUPINE.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

465. Of the four cases in which the Gerund occurs, only the Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative are in common use; as,—

> **cupidus audiendī**, *desirous of hearing;*
> **ad agendum nātus**, *born for action;*
> **mēns discendō alitur**, *the mind is fed by learning.*

Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund.

466. 1. Instead of the Gerund with a Direct Object, another construction is commoner. This consists in putting the Direct Object in the case of the Gerund and using the Gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the Gerundive Construction. Thus:—

Gerund Construction.	Gerundive Construction.
cupidus urbem videndī, *desirous of seeing the city;*	**cupidus urbis videndae;**
dēlector ōrātōrēs legendō, *I am charmed with reading the orators.*	**dēlector ōrātōribus legendīs.**

2. The commonest use of the Gerundive Construction is with **ad** to denote purpose; as, **ad pācem petendam vēnērunt**, *they came to seek peace* (lit. *for peace to be sought*).

THE SUPINE.

467. The Supine in **-um** is used after Verbs of motion to express *purpose;* as,—

> **lēgātī ad Caesarem grātulātum vēnērunt**, *envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him.*

468. VOCABULARY.

ad, *for* (denoting purpose), prep. with acc.
administrō, 1, *I perform.*
aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable.*
causā, abl., *for the sake of;* the dependent genitive precedes.
cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *I follow up.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *I escape.*
explōrō, 1, *I examine.*
ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator, envoy.*
praedō, ōnis, m., *robber.*
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *I render.*
spatium, ī (iī), n., *space, time.*
Themistoclēs, is, m., *Themistocles*, an Athenian statesman.
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*
versor, ārī, ātus sum, *be engaged in.*

EXERCISES.

469. 1. Nūlla fuit causa colloquendī. 2. Spatium sūmāmus ad cōgitandum. 3. Themistoclēs maritimōs praedōnēs cōnsectandō mare tūtum reddidit. 4. Caesar in hīs locīs nāvium parandārum causā morātur. 5. Multī rēgēs bellōrum gerendōrum cupidī fuērunt. 6. Tempus ad proelium committendum aliēnum fuit. 7. Ipse antecēdit ad itinera explōranda. 8. In hīs rēbus administrandīs versābātur. 9. Pācem petītum ōrātōrēs mittit. 10. Hīc locus ad pugnandum idōneus est. 11. Caesar hortandī fīnem fēcit. 12. Cum amīcīs de urbe līberandā colloquēbāmur.

470. 1. (There) was no opportunity of withdrawing. 2. The envoys came for (the purpose of) conferring with Caesar. 3. By saying these (things) he made the soldiers more eager for fighting. 4. For the sake of saving the city, we have given much[1] money. 5. He marches out from camp for (the purpose of) attacking this town. 6. We have come to announce this victory.

---

[1] Use **magnus**.

REVIEW.

471. 1. Ōrāmus ut fīnem dīcendī faciās. 2. Veritus est nē omnia āmitteret. 3. Timēmus ut nōbīs sit satis praesidī. 4. Tibi praecēpī nē haec officia neglegerēs. 5. Nōbīs imperat ut tēla parēmus. 6. Accidit ut paucī incolumēs redīrent. 7. Optāmus nē quis effugiat. 8. Tē rogāvī quem locum dēlēgissēs. 9. Caesar Ariovistum rogāvit quam ob rem Rhēnum trānsiisset. 10. Sī haec dīxissēs, laetus fuissem. 11. Intellegimus omnēs hominēs nātūrā lībertātem amāre. 12. Caesar intellegēbat quantō cum perīculō id fēcisset. 13. Bellī īnferendī causā ā Galliā in Britanniam īnsulam trānsiit.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. The subject of the verb stands in the nominative.
2. The object of the verb stands in the accusative.
3. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.
4. A predicate noun agrees with its subject in case.
5. An appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains.
6. An adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in gender, number, and case.
7. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands.
8. Many verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *showing*, and the like, take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other a predicate accusative (294).
9. Some verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, etc., take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing (299).
10. Transitive compounds of **trāns** may take two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition (300).
11. Duration of time and extent of space are denoted by the accusative (301).
12. The accusative of limit of motion is used with names of towns, and with **domum**, **domōs**, and **rūs** (302).
13. The accusative and ablative are used with prepositions.
14. The dative is the case of the indirect object (306, 1).
15. The dative is used with many verbs signifying *favor*, *help*, *injure*, *please*, *displease*, *trust*, *distrust*, *command*, *obey*,

serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade, and the like (306, 2).

16. The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, circum, com-** (**con-**), **in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super** (306, 3).
17. The dative of agency is used with the gerundive (311).
18. The dative of possession is used with the verb **sum** (312).
19. The dative of purpose or tendency denotes the end toward which an action is directed or for which something exists (313).
20. The dative is used with adjectives signifying *friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to, suitable,* etc. (314).
21. A noun used to complete the meaning of another noun is put in the genitive (318).
22. The genitive of possession denotes ownership (319).
23. The subjective genitive denotes the person who makes or produces something, or who has a feeling (320).
24. The objective genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling (321).
25. The genitive of the whole denotes the whole of which a part is taken (322).
26. The genitive modified by an adjective is used to denote quality (323).
27. The genitive is used with adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, memory, participation, power, fulness,* and their opposites (328).
28. The genitive is used with **meminī, reminīscor** ('I remember'), and with **oblīvīscor** ('I forget') (329).
29. The impersonals **pudet** ('it shames') and **paenitet** ('it causes regret') take the accusative of the person affected, along with the genitive of the object toward which the feeling is directed (330).
30. With **interest**, the person or thing concerned is denoted by the genitive (331).

31. The ablative of separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition (337).
32. The ablative accompanied by **ā** (**ab**) is used with passive verbs to denote the personal agent (338).
33. The ablative is used with comparatives in the sense of 'than' (339).
34. The ablative is used to denote means or instrument (344).
35. The ablative is used to denote cause (345).
36. The ablative modified by an adjective is used to denote manner (346).
37. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote accompaniment (350).
38. The ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison to denote the degree of difference (351).
39. The ablative modified by an adjective is used to denote quality (352).
40. The ablative of price is used with verbs of *buying* and *selling* (353).
41. The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is, or is done (354).
42. The ablative absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It generally consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle (359).
43. Place where is regularly denoted by the ablative with the preposition **in** (363).
44. Place from which is regularly denoted by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, or **ex** (364).
45. The ablative is used to denote the time at which or within which (365).
46. The hortatory subjunctive expresses an exhortation (388).
47. The jussive subjunctive expresses a command (389).
48. The optative subjunctive expresses a wish (393).
49. The potential subjunctive expresses the ideas conveyed by the English auxiliaries *should*, *would* (394).
50. The imperative is used in commands, admonitions, and entreaties (395).

51. The subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, and **quō** is used to denote purpose (400).
52. By the sequence of tenses principal tenses of the indicative are followed by principal tenses of the subjunctive; historical by historical (401).
53. A relative clause used to express some characteristic of an indefinite or general antecedent is called a clause of characteristic and stands in the subjunctive (405).
54. The subjunctive with **ut**, **ut nōn**, is used to denote result (406).
55. Causal clauses introduced by **quod** and **quia** take the indicative when the reason is that of the writer or speaker; the subjunctive, when the reason is viewed as that of another (407).
56. **Cum** causal takes the subjunctive (407, 2).
57. **Postquam**, 'after'; **ut**, **ubi**, 'when'; **simul ac**, 'as soon as,' referring to a single past act, take the perfect indicative (412).
58. **Cum** temporal referring to the past takes the indicative to denote the point of time at which something occurs; the subjunctive to denote the situation or circumstances under which something occurs (413).
59. **Cum** temporal referring to the present or future takes the indicative (414).
60. **Dum**, 'while,' takes the present indicative with the force of an imperfect (418, 1).
61. **Dum** and **dōnec**, 'as long as,' take the indicative (418, 2).
62. **Dum**, 'until,' takes the indicative to denote an actual fact; the subjunctive to denote expectancy (418, 3).
63. The subjunctive with **ut** and **nē** is used in substantive clauses developed from the volitive after verbs signifying to *admonish*, *request*, *command*, *grant*, *resolve*, and the like (424).
64. The subjunctive with **nē**, **quōminus**, and **quīn** is used in substantive clauses after verbs of *hindering* (425).

65. The subjunctive with **ut** and **nē** is used in substantive clauses developed from the optative (429).
66. The subjunctive with **ut** and **ut nōn** is used in substantive clauses of result (430).
67. The subjunctive is used in indirect questions after verbs of *asking*, *inquiring*, and the like (431).
68. In simple conditions the indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis (438).
69. In 'should' . . . 'would' conditions the subjunctive, present or perfect, is used in both protasis and apodosis (439).
70. In conditions contrary to fact the subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past (440).
71. **Quamquam**, 'although,' is followed by the indicative (441, 1).
72. **Cum**, 'although,' is followed by the subjunctive (441, 2).
73. Declarative sentences, upon becoming indirect, change their main verb to the infinitive with subject accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive (446).
74. The tenses of the infinitive denote time not absolutely, but with reference to the verb on which they depend (447).
75. The infinitive without subject accusative is used as the subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs (453).
76. The infinitive without subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs (454).
77. The infinitive with subject accusative is used as the subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs (455).
78. The infinitive with subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs (456).
79. The tenses of the participle express time, not absolutely, but with reference to the verb on which the participle depends (460).
80. Instead of the gerund with a direct object, another construction is commoner. This consists in putting the

direct object in the case of the gerund, and using the gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the gerundive construction (466).

81. The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion to express purpose (467).


GAUL
IN THE TIME OF
CAESAR.
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100 150
Longitude West from Greenwich
6° 4° 2° 0° 2°
50° 48° 46° 44°
OCEANUS
BRITANNIA
M. GERMAN
Cassivellauni opp.
CENIMAGNI
TRINOBANTES
CASSI
Londinium
Tamesis F.
ANCALITES
SEGONTIACI
Cantium
BELGAE
BIBROCI
Itius Portus
MORINI
ATREBATES
AMBILIATI
AMBIANI
Samarobriva
CALETES
Bratuspantium
BELLOVACI
VELIOCASSES
LEXOBII
VENELLI
Isara F.
Sequana
EBUROVICES
MELDI
Lutetia
PARISII
ESUBII
OSISMI
CURIOSOLITES
AMBIBARII
DIABLINTES
Vellaunodunum
CARNUTES
Cenabum
REDONES
VENETI
CENOMANI
ANDES
NAMNETES
Liger
Condivincum
TURONI
Noviodunum
Avaricum
BITURIGES CUBI
Gorgobi
PICTONES
Lemonum
LEMOVICES
SANTONI
Gergovia
ARVERNI
PETROCORII
Vesunna
ELEUTETI
CADURCI
Uxellodunum
Garumna F.
NITIOBROGES
VOCATES
COCOSATES
RUTENI
Segodunu
Tarnis
AQUITANI
Sotiates
SIBUZATES
TARUSATES
ELUSATES
GATES
AUSCI
TOLOSATES
Tolosa
PROVINCIA
Narbo
Carcaso
TECTOSAGES
TARBELLI
BIGERRIONES
GARUMNI
CANTABRI
HISPANIA CITERIOR
Pyrenaei M.



Rhenus F.
Vacalus
USIPETES
TENCTERI
SUGAMBRI
MENAPII
AMBIVARITI
EBURONES
LEVACI
Mosa
Aduatucorum opp.
Aduatuca
SEGNI
CONDRUSI
CAEROESI
PAEMANI
Arduenna Silva
Rhenus
UBII
G E R M A N I A
S U E B I
CHERUSCI
Bacenis Silva
Albis F.
MARCOMANNI
SEDUSII
VANGIONES
NEMETES
Hercynia Silva
TREVERI
Mosella
Nava F.
MEDIOMATRICI
Durocortorum
LEUCI
Matrona
Vosegus M.
TRIBOCES
RAURACI
Rhenus
LATOBRIGI
HARUDES
TULINGI
Danuvius F.
VINDELICI
Oenus
BOII
NORICI
Alesia
Admagetobriga
SEQUANI
Vesontio
Dubis
Bibracte
Arar F.
Cabillonum
Matisco
BRANNOVICES
AMBARRI
Jura M.
TIGURINI
VERBIGENI
HELVETII
Lemannus L.
NANTUATES
Genava
Rhodanus
SEDUNI
LEPONTII
Octodurus
VERAGRI
Rhenus F.
ALLOBROGES
Vienna
CEUTRONES
GRAIOCELI
Ocelum
Padus
GALLIA CISALPINA
Mediolanium
Cremona
Placentia
Verona
VENETIA
Aquileia
VOCONTII
CATURIGES
LIGURIA
Genua
Apenninus M.
Florentia
Pisae
ETRURIA
Tiberis F.
ITALIA
ROMA
ALBICI
Arelate
Aquae Sextiae
Massilia
SALLYES
INTERNUM
8°
10°
12°
50°
48°
46°
44°
Longitude East 6° from Greenwich 8° 10° 12°

BORMAY & CO., N.Y.



Caesar (Capitoline Museum).

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR.

BOOK II.

CHAPTERS 1–28. — WAR AGAINST THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.

League of the Belgians against Caesar.

1. CUM[1] esset Caesar in Citeriōre[2] Galliā, ita[3] utī suprā[4] dēmōnstrāvimus,[5] crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur,[6] litterīsque[7] item Labiēnī[8] certior[9] fīēbat, omnēs Belgās, quam[10] tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus,[5] contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre[11] obsidēsque inter[12] sē dare. Conjūrandī hae erant causae: prīmum, quod verēbantur, nē,[13]

The events narrated in Book II of Caesar's Commentaries belong to the year 57 B.C. The Helvetian War and the War with Ariovistus, which are comprised in Book I, occurred in the previous year, 58 B.C.

[1] **cum esset**: 413.* [2] **Citeriore Gallia**: northern Italy, a part of Caesar's province. [3] **ita uti**: *as;* literally, *so as.* [4] **supra**: referring to the statement made at the close of Book I of the Commentaries. [5] **demonstravimus, dixeramus**: the editorial 'we.' [6] **afferebantur, certior fiebat**: imperfect of repeated action, a very common use of the imperfect. [7] **litteris**: 344. [8] **Labieni**: Labienus had been left in charge of the winter quarters of Caesar's army in the territory of the Sequani. [9] **certior fiebat**, *etc.: was informed that all the Belgae . . . were combining . . . and exchanging hostages;* literally, *all the Belgae to combine and to give; conjurare* and *dare* are principal clauses in indirect discourse depending on *certior fiebat;* 446. *Belgas* is subject accusative of the infinitives. [10] **quam**: *who;* referring to *Belgas*, but attracted to the gender and number of the predicate noun, *partem; quam* is the subject of *esse.* [11] **conjurare**: *were forming a league, were combining.* [12] **inter se**: *to each other*, or, with *dare, were exchanging;* literally, *between*, or, *among themselves.* [13] **ne exercitus noster adduceretur**: *that our army would be led; ne adduceretur* is a Substantive Clause Developed from the Optative; 429.

* The numerical references are to the sections of this book.

omnī[1] pācātā Galliā, ad eōs[2] exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitābantur, partim[3] quī, ut[4] Germānōs[5] diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī[6] Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim[3] quī mōbilitāte[7] et levitāte animī novīs[8] imperiīs studēbant; ab nōnnūllīs[9] etiam, quī minus facile rēgnum imperiō[10] nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar advances to meet the crisis.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in Citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā[11] aestāte, in Ulteriōrem Galliam quī[12] dēdūceret, Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat[13] negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs[14] erant, utī[15] ea, quae[16]

---

[1] **omni pacata Gallia**: *if all Gaul should be subdued;* Ablative Absolute with the force of a condition; 359. [2] **ad eos**: *against them.* [3] **partim qui . . . partim qui**: *some of whom . . . others of whom;* literally, *partly* (*by those*) *who . . . partly* (*by those*) *who.* The antecedent of *qui* is (*ab*) *eis* understood. [4] **ut noluerant**: *just as they had been unwilling.* [5] **Germanos versari**: referring to the presence of the Germans under Ariovistus in the preceding year; *Germanos* is the subject accusative of *versari.* [6] **populi Romani . . . ferebant**: *were loath to have the army of the Roman people winter in Gaul and become established* (*there*). The infinitives are the object of *ferebant; in Gallia* limits both *hiemare* and *inveterascere.* [7] **mobilitate, levitate**: 345. [8] **novis imperiis**: *a change of control; i.e.* a change from Roman control; literally, *new controls.* For the dative, see 306, 2. The two classes of malcontents were (1) those who objected to the presence of a Roman army in Gaul; (2) those who on general principles desired a change. Both these classes of Gauls urged the Belgae to resist the Romans, thinking that Belgian success might free central Gaul also from Roman domination. [9] **ab nonnullis**: supply in sense, *sollicitabantur.* [10] **imperio nostro**: *under our rule;* Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. [11] **inita aestate**: *at the beginning of summer;* literally, *summer having been begun;* 359. [12] **qui deduceret**: Relative Clause of Purpose; 400, *a.* The antecedent of *qui* is *Pedium;* with *deduceret* understand as object *eas,* referring to *legiones.* [13] **dat negotium**: practically equivalent to *he directed.* [14] **Belgis**: 314. [15] **uti cognoscant, certiorem faciant**: *to learn, to inform;* Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive ('let them learn, let them inform'), dependent upon the idea of ordering involved in *dat negotium;* 424. [16] **quae gerantur**: *gerantur* is subjunctive in accordance with the general

apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant sēque[1] dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī[2] cōnstanter[3] omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs[4] cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum[5] nōn exīstimāvit, quīn[6] ad eōs[7] proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet diēbusque[8] circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervēnit.

The Remi espouse the Roman cause.

3. Eō[9] cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque[10] omnī opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae[11] ex Belgīs[12] sunt, ad eum lēgātōs[13] Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī haec[14] dīcēbant: "Nōs[15] nostraque omnia in fidem[16] atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus. Neque[17] cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum omnīnō conjūrāvimus. Parātī sumus obsidēs dare et imperāta tua facere et tē oppidīs[18] recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus juvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānīque quī cis Rhēnum[19] incolunt sēsē cum hīs conjūnxērunt, tantusque est hōrum omnium furor,

---

principle that a clause dependent upon a subjunctive is itself attracted into the subjunctive. The construction is called Subjunctive by Attraction.

[1] **se**: *him;* literally, *himself,* referring to Caesar. [2] **hi**: *i.e.* the Senones and other neighbors of the Belgians. [3] **constanter**: not *constantly,* but *uniformly;* all told the same story. [4] **manus**: *bands, forces.* [5] **dubitandum (esse) non**, *etc.: concluded that he must not hesitate.* [6] **quin proficisceretur**: *to set out.* After verbs of doubting we regularly have *quin* with the subjunctive. [7] **ad eos**: *against them.* [8] **diebus quindecim**: 365. [9] **eo**: the adverb. [10] **celerius omni opinione**: *more swiftly than any one expected;* 339. [11] **Galliae**: 314. [12] **ex Belgis** = *Belgarum.* [13] **legatos**: *as envoys;* predicate accusative. [14] **haec dicebant**: *i.e. spoke as follows.* [15] **nos nostraque omnia**: *ourselves and all our possessions;* objects of *permittimus; nostra* is the possessive used as a noun; 371. [16] **in fidem . . . permittimus**: *put under the protection and power.* The Remi had been vassals of their powerful neighbors, the Suessiones, and apparently saw in the coming of the Romans an opportunity to shake off the rule of their hated masters. This seems the secret of their prompt submission to Caesar. [17] **neque . . . neque**: *neither . . . nor.* [18] **oppidis**: *in their towns;* but the ablative is one of Means; 344. [19] **cis Rhenum**: *i.e.* to the west. Caesar is speaking from the point of view of the province of Gaul. Some of the Germans had crossed the Rhine and were at this time living on the west side of the river.

ut nē Suessiōnēs[1] quidem,[2] frātrēs[3] cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem jūre[4] et īsdem lēgibus ūtuntur ūnumque[5] magistrātum nōbīscum habent, dēterrēre potuerīmus,[6] quīn[7] cum hīs cōnsentīrent."

Fighting strength of the Belgian tribes.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae[8] cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid[9] in bellō possent, sīc[10] reperiēbat: Plērīque Belgae ā Germānīs[11] ortī sunt Rhēnumque[12] antīquitus trāductī propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdērunt, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolēbant, expulērunt. Hī[13] erant sōlī quī patrum memoriā,[14] omnī[15] Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs[16] Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī[17] prohibērent;[18] quā[19] ex rē fīēbat,[20] ut[21] eārum rērum memoriā[22] magnam sibi[23] auctōritātem in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum Rēmī omnia explōrāverant, propterеā quod, propinquitātibus[24] affīnitātibusque conjūnctī,[25] sciēbant quantam[26] multitūdinem quisque[27] in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id

---

1 **Suessiones**: object of *deterrere*. 2 **ne . . . quidem**: *not even*. 3 **fratres nostros**: the Suessiones were really masters of the Remi. The statements of the envoys were not entirely frank. 4 **jure, legibus**: 344, 1. 5 **unum magistratum nobiscum**: *i.e.* the same ruler as we; the Latin always says *nobiscum*, not *cum nobis*. 6 **potuerimus**: 406. 7 **quin . . . consentirent**: *from leaguing themselves with these*; 425. 8 **quae essent, possent**: 431. 9 **quid possent**: *how strong they were*; literally, *what they were able*. 10 **sic**: *as follows*. 11 **a Germanis orti sunt**: this view is hardly correct; the *Belgae* were probably of Celtic origin. 12 **Rhenum**: dependent on *trans* in composition in *traducti*. 13 **hi**: *viz.* the Belgae. 14 **memoria**: 365. 15 **omni Gallia vexata**: *when all* (*the rest of*) *Gaul was ravaged*; 359. 16 **Teutonos Cimbrosque**: for several years prior to 101 B.C. these barbarians had ravaged Gaul. They were finally crushed by Marius in 102 and 101 B.C. 17 **ingredi**: *from entering*; literally, *to enter*; the object of *prohiberent*. 18 **prohiberent**: subjunctive in a Clause of Characteristic; 405. 19 **qua ex re**: *and from this circumstance*; literally, *from which circumstance*. 20 **fiebat**: *it happened*. 21 **ut sumerent**: a Substantive Clause of Result; 430. It is subject of the impersonal *fiebat*. 22 **memoria**: 345. 23 **sibi**: with *sumerent*; 306, 1. 24 **propinquitatibus affinitatibusque**: *by ties of blood and marriage*. 25 **conjuncti**: *viz.* to the Belgae. 26 **quantam pollicitus esset**: 431. 27 **quisque**: *i.e.* each chieftain of the different tribes.

bellum pollicitus esset. Plūrimum[1] inter eōs Bellovacī[2] virtūte[3] et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēbant; hī centum mīlia hominum cōnficere[4] poterant; ex eō numerō sexāgintā mīlia polliciti erant tōtīusque bellī imperium postulābant. Suessiōnēs erant fīnitimī Rēmōrum, et fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēbant. Apud eōs Dīvitiācus nostrā etiam memoriā rēx fuerat, tōtīus Galliae potentissimus, quī cum[5] magnae partis[6] hārum regiōnum, tum Britanniae imperium obtinuit. Nunc rēx Galba erat; ad hunc[7] propter jūstitiam prūdentiamque[8] summa[9] tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferēbātur; hī oppida duodecim habēbant et quīnquāgintā hominum[10] mīlia pollicēbantur; totidem[11] Nerviī,[12] quī maximē ferī habentur[13] longissimēque absunt; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī[14] decem mīlia, Morinī xxv mīlia, Menapiī vii mīlia, Caletī x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduī totidem, Aduatucī xix mīlia; Condrūsī, Eburōnēs, Caerōsī, Paemānī, quī[15] ūnō nōmine[16] Germānī[17] appellantur, xl mīlia.

Caesar takes up a position on the Axona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque[18] ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem[19] senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipum-

---

[1] **plurimum valebant**: *had the greatest influence;* literally, *availed most.* [2] **Bellovaci**: their name survives in that of the modern town of Beauvais. [3] **virtute**, *etc.*: 354. [4] **conficere**: *muster.* [5] **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also*; literally, *when . . . then*, or, *while . . . at the same time.* [6] **partis**: dependent upon *imperium.* [7] **ad hunc**: *upon him.* [8] **prudentiam**: *wisdom.* The word seldom has the narrow meaning of our 'prudence.' [9] **summa**: *conduct*, or *direction.* [10] **hominum**: 322. [11] **totidem**: *viz.* 50,000. [12] **Nervii, Atrebates**, *etc.*: as verb, understand *pollicebantur* from the preceding sentence. [13] **habentur**: *are regarded.* [14] **Ambiani, Caleti**: these designations survive in the modern town names, Amiens, Calais. [15] **qui**: referring only to the last four tribes. [16] **uno nomine**: *i.e.* by the general name. [17] **Germani**: these are apparently the *Germani qui cis Rhenum incolunt* of chapter 3. [18] **liberaliter oratione prosecutus**: *having addressed them with friendly words;* literally, *having attended them generously in his words.* [19] **senatum**: some council of elders, corresponding roughly to the Roman Senate.

que līberōs obsidēs[1] ad sē addūcī jussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter[2] ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīvitiācum[3] Haeduum magnopere[4] cohortātus docet, quantō[5] opere reī[6] pūblicae commūnisque[7] salūtis intersit, manūs[8] hostium distinērī, nē[9] cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id[10] fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint[11] et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs, eum ab sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās[12] ad sē venīre vīdit, neque[13] jam longē abesse, ab eīs,[14] quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen[15] Axonam, quod[16] est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi[17] castra posuit. Quae[18] rēs

---

[1] **obsides**: *as hostages;* predicate accusative. [2] **diligenter ad diem**: *punctually to the day.* [3] **Divitiacum Haeduum**: not to be confounded with the Divitiacus mentioned above, who was already dead. This Divitiacus was under obligations to Caesar for the recent liberation of the Haedui from the tyranny of Ariovistus, as described in Book I.; hence it was natural that Caesar should appeal to him for aid at this juncture. [4] **magnopere**: *earnestly.* [5] **quanto opere . . . intersit**: *how greatly it concerned the republic and the common safety;* 431. Though written as two words, *quanto opere* is practically as much an adverb as the preceding *magnopere.* [6] **rei publicae, salutis**: the genitive, see 331; *rei publicae* means the Roman state. [7] **communis**: *i.e.* of the Romans and the Haeduans. [8] **manus hostium distineri**: *for the bands of the enemy to be kept apart; manus* is the subject accusative of *distineri,* while *distineri* itself is the subject of the impersonal *intersit.* [9] **ne confligendum sit**: *lest it be necessary to fight;* literally, *lest it have to be fought;* 400. The periphrastic conjugation is often thus used impersonally; 287. [10] **id fieri posse**: *that that could be done,* namely, that the forces of the enemy could be kept from uniting; *posse* depends upon the idea of saying implied in the context; 446. [11] **introduxerint et coeperint**: subordinate clauses in indirect discourse; 446. [12] **coactas ad se venire**: *had been assembled and were coming.* For the participle as the equivalent of a coördinate clause, see 460, 3. [13] **neque jam**, *etc.: and learned that they were no longer far off.* The two elements of *neque* must often thus be separated, and connected in translation with different parts of the sentence. [14] **ab eis exploratoribus**: limiting *cognovit.* [15] **flumen Axonam**: governed by the preposition *trans* in *traducere.* The *Axona* is the modern Aisne. [16] **quod**: its gender is determined by *flumen,* not by *Axonam.* [17] **ibi**: *i.e.* at the point where he crossed the river. This was at Berry-au-Bac, where remains of Caesar's fortifications have been brought to light in modern times. [18] **quae res**: *this action;* subject of *muniebat, reddebat,* and *efficiebat.*

et[1] latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post[2] eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus[3] reddēbat et, commeātūs[4] ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat. In eō flūmine[5] pōns erat. Ibi[6] praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte[7] flūminis Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem[8] pedum[9] duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī[10] pedum mūnīrī jubet.

Bibrax, a town of the Remi, attacked by the Belgae.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine[11] Bibrax aberat mīlia[12] passuum octō. Id ex itinere[13] magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum[14] est. Gallōrum[15] eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumjectā[16] multitūdine hominum tōtīs[17] moenibus, undique in mūrum lapidēs jacī coeptī[18] sunt

---

[1] **et . . . et**: *on the one hand . . . on the other;* correlative use of *et.* **muniebat**: *protected.* [2] **post eum quae erant,** *etc.: made his rear secure;* literally, *rendered safe from the enemy* (*those things*) *which were behind him.* The antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the object of *reddebat; tuta* is a predicate adjective limiting this *ea.* [3] **ab hostibus**: Ablative of Separation with *tuta.* [4] **commeatus . . . efficiebat**: *made it possible for supplies to be brought;* literally, *brought it about that supplies could be, etc.; ut possent* is a Substantive Clause of Result, the object of *efficiebat; ut* would ordinarily stand at the beginning of this clause; but, for the purpose of emphasis, *commeatus* is put first. [5] **in eo flumine**: *across that river.* This is the regular Latin idiom. [6] **ibi**: *i.e.* at the bridge on the north side of the Aisne, which here runs east and west. [7] **altera parte**: *i.e.* on the south side of the river. [8] **in altitudinem**: *in height;* literally, *into height.* [9] **pedum duodecim**: Genitive of Quality, limiting *vallo;* 323. [10] **duodeviginti pedum**: *i.e.* eighteen feet in breadth at the top. Its sloping sides naturally made the bottom much narrower. [11] **nomine**: Ablative of Specification. [12] **milia**: Accusative of Extent of Space; 301. [13] **ex itinere**: *on the march; i.e.* they did not contemplate a protracted siege. [14] **sustentatum est**: *the assault was withstood.* [15] **Gallorum . . . oppugnatio**: *the mode of assault of the Gauls, the same as that of the Belgians, is as follows.* [16] **circumjecta multitudine**: Ablative Absolute. [17] **totis moenibus** = *the whole town;* dative; indirect object of *circumjecta;* 306, 3. [18] **coepti sunt**: when the dependent infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is regularly used instead of *coepi.*

mūrusque dēfēnsōribus[1] nūdātus est, testūdine[2] factā, portās succendunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod[3] tum[4] facile fīēbat.[5] Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent,[6] in mūrō cōnsistendī[7] potestās[8] erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius[9] Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte[10] et grātiā inter suōs,[11] quī tum oppidō[12] praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī lēgātī[13] dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum[14] mittit, nisi subsidium sibi[15] submittātur,[16] sēsē diūtius sustinēre[17] nōn posse.[18]

The Belgae abandon the assault on Bibrax.

7. Eō[19] dē[20] mediā nocte Caesar īsdem[21] ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās[22] et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs[23] subsidiō[24] oppidānīs mittit;

---

[1] **defensoribus**: Ablative of Separation. [2] **testudine facta**: *having made a testudo; testudo* was the name given to a special military formation in which the shields of the soldiers overlapped one another like the scales of a tortoise. [3] **quod**: *i.e.* this mode of attack. [4] **tum**: *on the present occasion.* [5] **facile fiebat**: *was easily put into operation.* [6] **conicerent**: the plural, since *multitudo* is a collective noun. [7] **consistendi**: the gerund, used as Objective Genitive with *potestas.* [8] **potestas erat nulli**: *no one had the ability, no one could; nulli* is Dative of Possession; 312. [9] **Iccius Remus**: *Iccius, one of the Remi.* [10] **summa nobilitate**: *of the highest rank.* Ablative of Quality; 352. [11] **suos**: *his countrymen.* [12] **oppido**: dative; indirect object of *praefuerat;* 306, 3. [13] **legati**: *as envoys;* predicate nominative with *venerant,* limiting *qui.* His embassy is referred to on p. 211, line 9. [14] **ad eum**: *i.e.* to Caesar. [15] **sibi, sese**: probably to be taken as plurals referring to the Remi. [16] **submittatur**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse; 446. [17] **sustinere**: here used absolutely in the sense of *hold out.* [18] **posse**: principal clause in indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying involved in *nuntium mittit;* 446. [19] **eo**: *i.e.* to Bibrax. [20] **de**: *about.* [21] **isdem ducibus usus**: *employing the same men as guides; ducibus* is in predicate relation to *isdem.* Note that *usus* here has the force of a present participle, *i.e.* it denotes action occurring at the same time as that of the main verb, — *using.* [22] **Numidas et Cretās**: often mentioned as bowmen; the words are here used as adjectives; *Cretăs* is an irregular form (Greek accusative). [23] **Baleares**: the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands were famous in antiquity for their skill as slingers. The story went that the Balearic boys were allowed no dinner until they could bring it down with their slings. [24] **subsidio**: Dative of Purpose; 313.

quōrum adventū et[1] Rēmīs cum spē[2] dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus[3] eādem dē causā spēs[4] potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quō[5] adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus[6] cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus[7] passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus significābātur, amplius[8] mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar prepares for an engagement.

8. Caesar prīmō et[9] propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem[10] virtūtis proeliō[11] supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid[12] hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō[13] prō castrīs ad aciem[14] īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod[15] is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēdi-

---

[1] **et . . . et**: *on the one hand . . . and on the other.* [2] **cum spe defensionis**: *along with the hope of a* (*successful*) *defence.* [3] **hostibus**: *from the enemy;* the dative, as here, sometimes denotes separation. [4] **spes potiundi oppidi**: *hope of gaining the town;* the gerundive construction; 466. The ending *-undi* for *-endi* sometimes occurs in the gerund and gerundive. [5] **quo**: the adverb, equivalent to *ad quae*, referring to *vicis* and *aedificiis.* [6] **omnibus copiis**: Ablative of Accompaniment without *cum.* [7] **a milibus**, *etc.: less than two miles off; a* is here an adverb meaning *off, away; milibus* is Ablative of Degree of Difference, 351; *minus* is introduced without affecting the construction of the sentence; 339, 2. [8] **amplius milibus**: *milibus* is here Ablative of Comparison with the adverb *amplius.* [9] **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.* [10] **opinionem virtutis**: *their reputation for bravery.* [11] **proelio supersedere**: *to refrain from battle; proelio* is Ablative of Separation; 337. [12] **quid hostis virtute posset**: *what the enemy's mettle was;* literally, *what the enemy availed in valor.* [13] **loco . . . idoneo**: *since there was a place, etc.;* Ablative Absolute, equivalent to a causal clause; 359. [14] **ad aciem instruendam**: to be joined in thought with *opportuno atque idoneo.* [15] **quod is collis**, *etc.:* explaining why the place was suitable for drawing up a line of battle; namely, there was rising ground of just sufficient width for an army in battle array, while steep declivities protected the flanks.

tus[1] tantum[2] adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum[3] locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte[4] lateris dējectūs[5] habēbat[6] et in frontem[7] lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque[8] latere ejus collis trānsversam[9] fossam obdūxit circiter passuum[10] quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās[11] fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta[12] collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset,[13] hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant,[14] ab lateribus[15] pugnantēs[16] suōs[17] circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus,[18] quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relīctīs, ut, sī quō opus esset,[19] subsidiō[20] dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās[21] īnstrūxerant.

---

[1] **editus**: *being elevated.* [2] **tantum adversus in latitudinem**, *etc.*: *was as wide in front* (*i.e.* on the side toward the enemy, — the west) *as a line of battle when drawn up could fill; tantum* is an Accusative of Extent of Space, 301; *adversus* is an adjective agreeing with *collis,* the subject of *patebat; loci* is a Genitive of the Whole (322) with *quantum;* we should have expected it to limit *tantum.* [3] **quantum**: object of *occupare.* [4] **ex utraque parte**: *on each side.* [5] **lateris dejectus**: *lateral declivities.* [6] **habebat**: the subject is still *collis.* [7] **in frontem leniter**, *etc.*: *and in front, sloping gently, gradually returned to the plain.* Remember that the front is the western side. [8] **ab utroque**: the principal clause of this long sentence begins here. [9] **transversam fossam**: *at right angles,* namely, to the line of the eminence. [10] **passuum quadringentorum**: *four hundred paces* (*long*); Genitive of Quality; 323. [11] **ad extremas fossas**: *at the ends of the ditches;* 373. [12] **tormenta**: engines for hurling missiles, such as javelins or heavy stones. See pp. 9, 11. [13] **instruxisset**: Subjunctive by Attraction to *posset;* see note on p. 210, line 13. [14] **poterant**: as the explanation of the writer, this clause stands in the indicative. [15] **ab lateribus**: *on the flanks.* [16] **pugnantes**: limiting *suos.* [17] **suos**: *his men.* [18] **duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat**: *i.e.* the thirteenth and fourteenth legions enrolled in Hither Gaul in the spring of this year; see chapter 1. As usual Caesar spares his raw troops, holding them back as reserves for a critical emergency. [19] **si quo opus esset**: *if it was necessary for them to be led anywhere; quo* is the indefinite adverb, limiting *duci* to be supplied. This *duci* (or, with subject accusative, *eos duci*) is the subject of *esset; esset* is attracted into the subjunctive. [20] **subsidio**: Dative of Purpose; 313. [21] **eductas instruxerant**: *i.e. had led them forth and drawn them up;* 460, 3.

The Belgae attempt to cut off Caesar's supplies.

9. Palūs erat nōn[1] magna inter[2] nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent,[3] hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī[4] ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut[5] impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō[6] equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre[7] equitum proeliō nostrīs,[8] Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod[9] esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi, vadīs repertīs, partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō,[10] ut,[11] sī possent,[12] castellum,[13] cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī[14] minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur,[15] quī magnō[16] nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum[17] gerendum erant, commeātūque[18] nostrōs prohibērent.

---

[1] **non magna**: *i.e.* small. [2] **inter nostrum . . . exercitum**: *between our army and that of the enemy.* The possessive pronoun *nostrum* is made coordinate with the genitive *hostium.* [3] **si nostri transirent**: indirect question with *si;* a rare usage. [4] **si . . . fieret**: *in case a beginning should be made.* The clause is subordinate to *aggrederentur,* which in turn is subordinate to *parati.* [5] **ut impeditos aggrederentur**: *that they might attack them encumbered; impeditos* limits *eos* understood, referring to the enemy. [6] **proelio . . . contendebatur**: *a cavalry battle was in progress;* literally, *it was being contended in a cavalry battle.* [7] **secundiore proelio**: *although the battle was more favorable;* Ablative Absolute; 359. [8] **nostris**: with *secundiore;* 314. [9] **quod esse,** *etc.: which, it has been shown, was behind our camp;* literally, *which to be behind our camp has been shown; quod* is the subject of *esse; esse* is subject of the impersonal *demonstratum est.* [10] **eo consilio**: *with this object.* [11] **ut expugnarent**: a Substantive Clause of Purpose, in apposition with *eo consilio.* [12] **si possent, si potuissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction. [13] **castellum**: at the southern end of the bridge. Their plan was to cross the river and surprise Sabinus from the rear. [14] **si minus potuissent**: *if they should not be able.* [15] **popularentur, prohiberent**: *ut* must be supplied with these. The clauses are further appositives of *eo consilio.* [16] **magno usui**: Dative of Purpose. [17] **ad bellum gerendum**: *for waging war.* [18] **commeatuque**: *commeatu* is an Ablative of Separation.

The Belgae are defeated and disperse to their homes with further losses.

10. Caesar certior[1] factus ab Titūriō, omnem equitātum et levis[2] armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte[3] trādūcit atque ad eōs[4] contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī, magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per[5] eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē[6] trānsīre cōnantēs[7] multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū[8] circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Hostēs, ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō[9] et dē flūmine trānseundō spem[10] sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque[11] nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs[12] frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō, cōnstituērunt, optimum[13] esse, domum suam[14] quemque revertī, et, quōrum[15] in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent,[16] ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīre, ut[17] potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et

---

[1] **certior factus**: *i.e.* having been informed of the situation. [2] **levis armaturae Numidas**: *light-armed Numidians*; literally, *Numidians of light equipment*; Genitive of Quality; 323. [3] **ponte**: *by the bridge*; Ablative of the Way By Which. [4] **ad eos contendit**: the Belgians were to the west of the bridge, probably about two miles from Berry-au-Bac. [5] **per**: *over*. [6] **audacissime**: Caesar often pays such tributes as this to the bravery of his antagonists. It may be only an indirect way of enhancing the glory of his own achievements. [7] **conantes**: agreeing with *reliquos*. [8] **equitatu circumventos interfecerunt**: *they surrounded with the cavalry and cut to pieces*; 460, 3. [9] **oppido**: *Bibrax*; see chapters 6, 7. [10] **spem se fefellisse**: *that hope had disappointed them*; 446. [11] **neque**: *and . . . not*, as often. [12] **res frumentaria deficere coepit**: the Gauls were inexperienced in systematic campaigning. Ordinarily they provided insufficient supplies for lengthy operations, and hence were often forced to disperse prematurely to their homes. In the present instance Caesar was thus able to attack and subjugate each tribe singly. [13] **optimum esse**, *etc.*: *that it was best for each to return to his own home*; *esse* is the object of *constituerunt*; *optimum* is a predicate adjective, limiting *reverti*, the subject of *esse*. [14] **domum suam**: 302. [15] **quorum**: its antecedent is *eos* in the next line. [16] **introduxissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction; see p. 210, line 13. [17] **ut decertarent, uterentur**: purpose clauses. Note that *decerto* means more than merely 'contend'; it implies fighting to a finish.

domesticīs cōpiīs[1] reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam[2] cum[3] reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod[4] Dīvitiācum[5] atque Haeduōs fīnibus[6] Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs[7] persuādērī, ut[8] diūtius morārentur neque[9] suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī, nūllō[10] certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum[11] sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum[12] pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt,[13] ut cōnsimilis fugae[14] profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus,[15] quod, quā[16] dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum[17] equitātumque castrīs[18] continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā[19] rē ab explōrātōribus,[20] omnem equitātum, quī[21] novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit.

---

[1] **copiis**: for the ablative, see 344, 1. [2] **sententiam**: *resolution.* [3] **cum reliquis causis**: *along with other reasons,* to be taken with *haec quoque ratio.* [4] **quod cognoverant**: *the fact that they knew;* explanatory of *haec ratio.* Note that the pluperfect of *cognosco* has the force of an imperfect of the verb 'know.' [5] **Divitiacum . . . appropinquare**: *i.e.* Divitiacus was complying with Caesar's request, made above, p. 214, line 6. [6] **finibus**: for the dative, see 306, 3. [7] **his persuaderi non poterat**: *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded;* literally, *it could not be persuaded to these.* Verbs that govern the dative in the active, can be used in the passive only impersonally. [8] **ut morarentur**: *to delay;* a substantive clause dependent upon *persuaderi.* [9] **neque . . . ferrent**: *and to forego lending aid to their countrymen;* literally, *and* (*-que*) *not* (*ne-*) *to lend.* [10] **nullo certo ordine,** *etc.*: *without any definite arrangement and direction;* Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. [11] **cum peteret**: a causal clause. [12] **domum**: 302. [13] **fecerunt ut . . . videretur**: *they made their departure seem, etc.;* literally, *brought about that their departure seemed; ut videretur* is a Substantive Clause of Result, the object of *fecerunt;* 430. [14] **fugae**: dative. [15] **veritus**: *fearing.* [16] **qua de causa discederent**: *why they were withdrawing;* indirect question; 341. [17] **exercitum**: here the infantry as contrasted with the cavalry. [18] **castris**: with *teneo* and *contineo,* the camp is considered as the means rather than the place; hence the simple ablative. [19] **confirmata re**: *when the fact was established,* namely, of their retreat. [20] **exploratoribus**: *scouts;* different from the spies (*speculatores*) who mingled among the enemy in disguise. [21] **qui moraretur**: Relative Clause of Purpose; 400, *a.*

Hīs[1] Quīntum Pedium et Lūcium Auruncuīleium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī jussit. Hī[2] novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia[3] passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium[4] concīdērunt, cum[5] ab extrēmō[6] agmine, ad quōs[7] ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs,[8] quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur[9] neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre,[10] perturbātīs ōrdinibus, omnēs in fugā sibi[11] praesidium pōnerent.[12] Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam[13] eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Noviodunum surrenders.

12. Postrīdiē[14] ejus diēī Caesar, priusquam[15] sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs[16] erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere[17]

---

1 **his**: plural, as referring to the collective noun *equitatum*. For the dative, see 306, 3. 2 **hi**: referring to the infantry and cavalry just mentioned. 3 **multa milia**: 301. 4 **fugientium**: *as they fled.* 5 **cum consisterent**, *etc.*: *cum* is causal, and introduces the reason for the great slaughter, namely, only those on the rear of the Belgian host stood their ground, while the rest, instead of joining in the defence, hurried on madly in quest of safety. 6 **ab extremo agmine**: *at the rear.* 7 **ad quos ventum erat**: the antecedent of *quos* is *ei* understood, the subject of *consisterent*,— *those to whom they had come*; literally, *to whom it had been come.* 8 **priores** = *sed priores* (*those in front*); Asyndeton; *priores* is the subject of *ponerent.* 9 **viderentur**, **continerentur**: Subjunctive by Attraction. 10 **exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus**: two Ablatives Absolute; but the first is the cause of the second, *i.e.* the ranks were thrown into disorder at the sound of the shouting. 11 **sibi**: Dative of Reference. 12 **praesidium ponerent**: *sought* (literally, *placed*) *security.* 13 **tantam . . . quantum**: *as many as time allowed*; literally, *as great a number as was the duration of the day*,— a careless and inexact comparison. 14 **postridie ejus diei**: a curious idiom for 'on the following day'; literally, 'on the following day of that day.' 15 **priusquam reciperent**: with *antequam* and *priusquam*, the subjunctive is used to denote anticipation or expectancy. Note that *se reciperent* here means 'recovered.' It is used differently in line 13 above. 16 **Remis**: dependent upon *proximi*; 314. 17 **magno itinere**: *by a rapid march.*

ad oppidum Noviodūnum[1] contendit. Id ex itinere[2] oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum[3] ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs[4] dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās[5] agere,[6] quaeque[7] ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere jactō[8] turribusque[9] cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine[10] operum, quae neque vīderant ante[11] Gallī neque audierant,[12] et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus[13] Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur,[14] impetrant.

---

[1] **Noviodunum**: the name means 'Newtown.' [2] **ex itinere**: *i.e.* without stopping to institute a regular siege. [3] **vacuum ab defensoribus**: *lacking defenders; vacuum* is in predicate agreement with the omitted subject of *esse; defensoribus* is an Ablative of Separation; 337. [4] **paucis defendentibus**: Ablative Absolute with adversative force, — *though few defended it.* [5] **vineas**: movable *sheds* or *mantlets*, to protect the soldiers as they approached the walls of the enemy. Their dimensions are given as eight feet broad, seven feet high, and sixteen feet long. [6] **agere**: *to move up, advance.* [7] **quaeque** = *et quae;* the antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the object of *comparare.* [8] **aggere jacto**: *when an agger or siege-terrace had been thrown up.* This was begun at some distance from the enemy's walls and gradually approached them *at right angles* as its construction advanced, the end toward the enemy being protected by sheds and other defences. It was built as high as the hostile wall against which it was intended, and when completed furnished an easy avenue of approach to the battlements of the besieged. [9] **turribus constitutis**: these towers were called *turres ambulatoriae*, literally, 'walking towers,' so designated because they were on rollers and could be moved from place to place. In the construction of an *agger* they were often of service in protecting the workmen by harassing the enemy. These towers were of several stories and sometimes rose to a height of ninety feet. They were supplied with battering rams and engines for hurling heavy missiles against the enemy. See p. 4. [10] **magnitudine operum**: dependent upon *permoti.* [11] **ante**: the adverb. [12] **audierant**: *had heard of.* [13] **petentibus Remis**: *since the Remi begged.* [14] **ut conservarentur**: a substantive clause, object of *petentibus;* 424.

Submission of the Bellovaci.

13. Caesar obsidibus[1] acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī[2] cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs majōrēs[3] nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē[4] in ejus fidem ac potestātem venīre neque[5] contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere.[6] Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī[7] mulierēsque ex mūrō, passīs[8] manibus suō mōre,[9] pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs[10] Dīvitiācus (nam post discessum[11] Belgārum, dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs, ad eum reverterat) facit[12] verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē[13] atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs[14] ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent,[15] Haeduōs, ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs,[16] omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et[17] ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et[17] populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī[18] ejus

---

[1] **obsidibus acceptis primis,** *etc.: after their leading men had been received as hostages; obsidibus* is in predicate relation to *primis* and *liberis.* [2] **qui cum**: *when they.* [3] **majores natu**: *the elders; natu* is an Ablative of Specification; 354. [4] **sese . . . venire**: *that they submitted to* (literally, *came into*) *his protection and power.* [5] **neque**: *and . . . not.* [6] **contendere**: we might have expected the future here; but the present is more vivid, — *they did not fight.* [7] **pueri**: *children,* including both girls and boys. [8] **passis**: from *pando.* [9] **suo more**: *according to their custom;* to be joined closely with *passis manibus.* Stretching out the hands was their way of indicating submission. [10] **his**: the Bellovaci. [11] **post discessum Belgarum**: *i.e.* after the different tribes had dispersed owing to the failure of their supplies, as explained above, p. 221, line 6. [12] **facit verba**: *spoke.* [13] **in fide atque amicitia civitatis**: *i.e.* had been loyal and friendly. [14] **impulsos**: as indicated by the position, the emphasis of the sentence rests on this word, — *it was because they had been impelled by their chiefs, . . . that they had revolted, etc.* [15] **dicerent**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse. [16] **redactos**: the participle. [17] **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.* [18] **qui**: its antecedent is *eos* understood, the subject of *profugisse.*

cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod[1] intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent,[2] in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā[3] clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs[4] ūtātur.[5] Quod sī fēcerit,[6] Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum,[7] quōrum[8] auxiliīs atque opibus, sī[9] qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.[10]

15. Caesar honōris[11] Dīvitiācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās[12] magnā[13] inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine[14] praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō[15] collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Description of the Nervii.

Eōrum[16] fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc[17] reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs[18] mercātōribus;[19] nihil patī[20] vīnī[21]

---

[1] **quod**: causal. [2] **intulissent**: this would be subjunctive (of indirect question) even in the direct discourse. [3] **sua**: *his usual*, or, *his well known*. [4] **in eos**: *toward them*. [5] **utatur**: this and the remaining subjunctives of this chapter are in the present and perfect tenses, instead of the imperfect and pluperfect, as though dependent upon a principal tense, thus giving greater vividness to the narration (*repraesentatio*). [6] **quod si fecerit**: *if he do this; fecerit* represents a future perfect of direct discourse. [7] **amplificaturum (esse)**: the subject is *eum* understood, referring to Caesar. [8] **quorum**: its antecedent is *Belgas*. [9] **si qua**: *whatever*. [10] **consuerint**: equivalent to a present in the sense of *be wont;* its subject is *ei* understood, referring to the Haedui. [11] **honoris Divitiaci causa**: *as a mark of honor to Divitiacus*. Caesar's policy was to enhance the prestige of the Haedui, by attributing this act of pardon to the influence of Divitiacus. [12] **civitas**: namely, of the Bellovaci. [13] **magna auctoritate**: Ablative of Quality; 352. [14] **multitudine**: Ablative of Specification. [15] **oppido**: Bratuspantium. [16] **eorum**: namely, of the Ambiani; the word is emphatic by position. [17] **sic**: *as follows*. [18] **ad eos**: limiting *aditum*. [19] **mercatoribus**: Dative of Possession, *i.e. merchants had no access*. [20] **pati**: as subject understand *eos*, referring to the Nervii. [21] **vini**: Genitive of the Whole with *nihil*, — *no wine*.

reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam[1] pertinentium īnferrī,[2] quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent;[3] esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque[4] virtūtem prōjēcissent; cōnfīrmāre, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

The Nervii and their allies plan to attack Caesar by surprise.

16. Cum per eōrum[5] fīnēs trīduum iter[6] fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs, Sabim[7] flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia[8] passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur[9]); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs,[10] quīque[11] per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum[12] conjēcisse, quō[13] propter palūdēs exercituī[14] aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī[15] locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex[16] dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem

---

1 **ad luxuriam pertinentium**: *i.e.* which tend to encourage self-indulgence. 2 **inferri**: *to be imported.* 3 **existimarent**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse. 4 **patriam**: the adjective. 5 **eorum**: referring to the Nervii. 6 **iter**: the line of Caesar's march was first north-west, and then north-east. 7 **Sabim flumen**: the modern Sambre, a tributary of the Meuse. 8 **milia**: Accusative of Extent of Space (301); *amplius* is introduced without affecting the construction of the sentence; 339, 1. 9 **uti . . . experirentur**: 424. 10 **mulieres**: the object of *conjecisse.* 11 **quique** = *et qui.* The antecedent of *qui* is *eos* understood, object of *conjecisse.* 12 **eum locum**: *a place.* 13 **quo esset**: not merely a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, but a Clause of Characteristic; hence the subjunctive would have been used even in the direct form; *quo* is the adverb, equivalent to *ad* or *in quem.* 14 **exercitui**: Dative of Possession; 312. 15 **qui deligant**: Relative Clause of Purpose. Note that after the Historical Present either principal or historical sequence may follow. 16 **ex dediticiis**: *of those who had surrendered;* used instead of the Genitive of the Whole, with *complures.*

secūtī ūnā[1] iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum[2] diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum[3] numerum intercēdere,[4] neque[5] esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra[6] vēnisset[7] reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs[8] adorīrī; quā[9] pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs, futūrum,[10] ut reliquae[11] contrā[12] cōnsistere nōn audērent.

Adjuvābat[13] etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum[14] equitātū nihil[15] possent (neque enim[16] ad hōc tempus eī reī[17] student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō[18] facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent,[19] impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus[20] incīsīs atque īnflexīs crēbrīsque

---

[1] **una**: the adverb. [2] **eorum dierum consuetudine**, *etc.*: *having noticed the customary march of our army during those days*; *consuetudine* is limited by *dierum* and *itineris*, while *itineris* is further limited by *exercitus*. [3] **magnum numerum**: *a large amount.* [4] **intercedere**: *i.e.* was placed between. [5] **neque esse quicquam negoti**: *and there was no difficulty*; *quicquam* is predicate accusative with *esse*, the subject of *esse* being *adoriri* in line 8, below; *negoti* is Genitive of the Whole. [6] **in castra**: the Romans regularly constructed a fortified camp when they came to the end of the day's march. [7] **venisset, abessent**: corresponding respectively to the future perfect and future of direct statement. [8] **sub sarcinis**: *i.e.* carrying the heavy packs of rations, tools, and cooking utensils regularly borne by every soldier. [9] **qua pulsa**, *etc.*: the Ablatives Absolute here denote means, — *by routing these, etc.* [10] **futurum ut non auderent**: equivalent to *non ausuros esse*; literally, *it would be* (*happen*) *that they would not dare*; *ut non auderent* is a Substantive Clause of Result, the subject of *futurum* (*esse*). [11] **reliquae**: namely, *legiones*. [12] **contra**: the adverb. [13] **adjuvabat etiam eorum consilium**, *etc.*: *a thing that also supported the advice of these was the fact that, etc.*; literally, *it supported their advice that the Nervii, etc.*; *adjuvabat* is emphatic, and hence heads the sentence. [14] **cum**: here causal. [15] **nihil**: for the accusative, see note on p. 217, line 12. [16] **neque enim**: *nor indeed; enim* did not originally mean *for*, but *now, indeed.* This meaning has for the most part disappeared in classical Latin, but survives in a few phrases like *neque enim, sed enim, etc.* [17] **ei rei**: *i.e.* cavalry forces; for the dative, see 306, 2. [18] **quo impedirent**: in purpose clauses *quo* is regularly used, if there is a comparative in the sentence. [19] **venissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction. [20] **arboribus incisis,**

in[1] lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interjectīs,[2] effēcerant,[3] ut[4] īnstar[5] mūrī hae saepēs[6] mūnīmentum praebērent, quō[7] nōn modo[8] nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum[9] sibi[10] cōnsilium[11] Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

Site of Caesar's camp on the Sabis.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec,[12] quem[13] locum nostrī castrīs[14] dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter[15] dēclīvis ad flūmen[16] Sabim, quod[17] suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī[18] acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur[19] adversus[20] huic[21] et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus[22] apertus,[23] ab[24] superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē con-

---

etc.: translate the Ablatives Absolute by clauses introduced by *after*, — *after cutting into, etc.*

[1] **in latitudinem**: *sidewise.* The young trees had merely been cut enough to make it possible to bend them over to a horizontal position without destroying their vitality. [2] **interjectis**: *i.e.* planted in between. [3] **effecerant**: its subject is *Nervii*, p. 227, l. 11. The clause *quod effecerant* is the subject of the impersonal *adjuvabat.* [4] **ut praeberent**: Substantive Clause of Result, the object of *effecerant.* [5] **instar muri**: *like a wall; instar* is in apposition with *munimentum.* [6] **hae saepes**: the farmers of this locality fence in their fields to-day with hedges of this same kind. [7] **quo**: *into which;* the adverb. [8] **non modo . . . posset**: *which not only could not be penetrated, but not even seen through; literally, into which it not only could not be entered, etc.; intrari* and *perspici* are used impersonally. [9] **omittendum**: understand *esse.* [10] **sibi**: *by them;* Dative of Agency; 311. [11] **consilium**: *i.e.* the project of attacking the first legion. [12] **haec**: explained by what follows. [13] **quem locum . . . delegerant**: the spot chosen was on the heights near the modern hamlet of Neuf Mesnil. The antecedent is repeated in the relative clause, as often in Caesar. [14] **castris**: Dative of Purpose. [15] **aequaliter**: *evenly, regularly.* [16] **ad flumen**: with *vergebat.* [17] **quod**: the gender is determined by *flumen,* not by *Sabim.* [18] **pari acclivitate**: Ablative of Quality; *i.e.* the second hill had the same slope as the first. [19] **nascebatur**: *rose.* [20] **adversus et contrarius**: *opposite and across* (*the stream*). [21] **huic**: for the dative, see 314. [22] **infimus**: *at the base.* [23] **apertus**: as opposed to the wooded portion above. [24] **ab superiore parte**: *at the top.*

tinēbant; in apertō locō secundum[1] flūmen paucae statiōnēs[2] equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum[3] circiter trium.

The Belgae attack the camp.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur omnibus[4] cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat,[5] ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine[6] suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās[7] dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat;[8] inde duae legiōnēs, quae[9] proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque[10] impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque[11] nostrī longius, quam[12] quem ad fīnem porrēcta[13] loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs[14] īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere[15] dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, quī in

---

1 **secundum**: the preposition, *along.* 2 **stationes**: *pickets.* 3 **pedum trium**: Genitive of Quality; 323. 4 **omnibus copiis**: Ablative of Accompaniment; here used without the preposition *cum.* 5 **aliter se habebat ac**, *etc.*: *was different from what the Belgians had reported;* literally, *had itself otherwise than; ac* with comparatives and similar words often means *than.* The compound subject *ratio ordoque* is construed with a singular verb, since *ratio ordoque* constitutes one idea. 6 **consuetudine sua**: *according to his custom.* 7 **expeditas**: *i.e.* they had been relieved of their heavy packs (*sarcinae*), and were ready for battle; *expeditas* is in predicate relation to *legiones.* 8 **collocarat** = *collocaverat.* 9 **quae proxime conscriptae erant**: the thirteenth and fourteenth. 10 **praesidio**: Dative of Purpose; 313. 11 **neque**: *and . . . not,* introducing *auderent.* 12 **quam quem ad finem**: *than as far as*; for *quam ad eum finem ad quem.* 13 **porrecta pertinebant**: literally, *extended stretched out*; but *porrecta* is superfluous to our sense, and may be omitted in translation. 14 **cedentes**: limiting *eos* understood, the object of *insequi.* 15 **opere dimenso**: *having laid out the works.* Note that *dimenso,* though the perfect participle of a deponent verb, is here used passively; 238, *b.*

silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa[1] sunt, quod[2] tempus inter eōs[3] committendī[4] proelī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant,[5] subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs[6] equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et[7] ad silvās et in flūmine et jam in manibus[8] nostrīs hostēs vidērentur.[9] Eādem autem celeritāte adversō[10] colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī[11] erant, contendērunt.

The Romans are unprepared, but their discipline stands them in good stead.

20. Caesarī[12] omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum[13] prōpōnendum,[14] signum[15] tubā dandum, ab opere[16] revocandī mīlitēs, quī[17] paulō[18] longius aggeris[19] petendī

---

[1] **visa sunt**: *were seen.* [2] **quod tempus . . . convenerat**: *the moment which had been agreed upon.* Grammatically *tempus* is the subject of *convenerat*, but logically it is in apposition with the general idea involved in *ubi . . . visa sunt.* [3] **inter eos**: this phrase modifies *convenerat.* [4] **committendi proeli**: *for joining battle.* Note that *proeli* limits *tempus*, and *committendi* is the gerundive agreeing with *proeli.* [5] **sese confirmaverant**: *had determined* (*to do*). [6] **nostros equites**: those who had crossed the river with the slingers and archers. [7] **et . . . et . . . et**: correlative use; note the emphasis of the repetition. [8] **in manibus nostris**: *close beside us.* The distance between the two camps was about three-quarters of a mile. Probably not more than ten minutes elapsed, after the Gauls emerged from cover, before they reached the Romans. [9] **viderentur**: *were seen,* like *visa sunt* above. [10] **adverso colle**: *up the hill*; literally, *the hill being against them*; Ablative Absolute. [11] **occupati erant**: *were busied; occupati* is here an adjective. [12] **Caesari . . . agenda**: *by Caesar, all things had to be done at one time*; *Caesari* is Dative of Agency; the emphasis on the word is indicated by its position. [13] **vexillum**: the crimson banner set up as a signal for battle. [14] **proponendum, dandum**: with these and the following gerundives *erat* or *erant* must be supplied. [15] **signum tuba dandum**: *i.e.* the signal for forming in battle array. [16] **ab opere**: *i.e.* the camp, which they had begun to fortify. [17] **qui**: as antecedent supply *ei*, the subject of *arcessendi* (*erant*). [18] **paulo longius**: *i.e.* somewhat further than usual. [19] **aggeris**: here not in the sense of *embankment*, but of the materials used in constructing the rampart of the camp, such as timber, stone, etc.

causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, signum[1] dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat.[2] Hīs difficultātibus duae[3] rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod[4] superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī,[5] quid[6] fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī[7] sibi praescrībere, quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs[8] Caesar discēdere nisi[9] mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil[10] jam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur,[11] administrābant.

Caesar hurries about, encouraging his troops.

21. Caesar, necessāriīs[12] rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam[13] in partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn[14] longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu[15] perturbārentur animō[16] hostiumque impetum

---

[1] **signum**: *i.e.* for the engagement. [2] **impediebat**: for the singular verb with compound subject, see the note on *habebat*, p. 229, line 5. [3] **duae res**: namely, (1) *scientia atque usus militum*, (2) *quod . . . vetuerat*. [4] **quod . . . poterant**: explanatory of *scientia atque usus*. [5] **exercitati**: agreeing with the subject of *poterant*. [6] **quid oporteret**: indirect question, the object of *praescribere*. [7] **ipsi sibi**: the reflexive pronouns are often thus emphasized by the addition of *ipse*, which in such cases, instead of standing in apposition with the reflexive, more commonly agrees with the subject. In this use, *ipse* is often untranslatable in English; thus here it serves merely as a contrast with *ab aliis*. [8] **legatos**: the regular commanders of the legions. [9] **nisi munitis castris**: *until after the camp should be fortified*; literally, *unless the camp having been fortified*; Ablative Absolute. [10] **nihil jam**: *no longer*; but *nihil* is more emphatic than *non*. [11] **videbantur**: *seemed best*. [12] **necessariis rebus**: *i.e.* only the absolutely indispensable things. [13] **quam in partem fors obtulit**: *in the direction which chance suggested*; for *in eam partem in quam, etc.* [14] **non longiore oratione quam uti**, *etc.*: *in no more words than necessary to urge them to retain, etc.*; the clause *uti retinerent* depends upon the notion of urging or exhorting suggested by *oratione*. [15] **neu**: *neve* (*neu*), and not *neque*, is regularly used to introduce an added negative Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive. [16] **animo**: Ablative of Specification.

fortiter sustinērent,[1] quod[2] nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam[3] quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in[4] alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus[5] occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguïtās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsignia[6] accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās[7] induendās scūtīsque[8] tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit.[9] Quam[10] quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque[11] prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec[12] cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs[13] pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

Fighting under difficulties.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut[14] locī nātūra dējectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae[15] legiōnēs aliae[16] aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque[17] dēnsissimīs, ut[18] ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interjectīs[19] prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa[20] subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque

---

1 **sustinerent**: the introductory conjunction is *uti*, p. 231, l. 15. 2 **quod . . . aberant**: to be joined in thought with *signum dedit*. 3 **quam quo . . . posset**: *than the cast of a spear;* literally, *than (a point) to which a spear could be hurled; quo posset* is a Clause of Characteristic; 405. 4 **in alteram partem**: namely, to the right wing. 5 **pugnantibus**: *i.e. already fighting; pugnantibus* agrees with *eis* understood, the indirect object of *occurrit;* 306, 3. 6 **ad insignia accommodanda**: *for adjusting the decorations (to the helmets)*; by *insignia* we are probably to understand the crests of the helmets. 7 **ad galeas induendas**: on the march the helmets were not worn on the head, but were suspended about the necks of the soldiers. See the illustration, p. 72. 8 **scutis tegimenta detrahenda**: except in battle, the shields were covered by cases to protect them from injury and the effects of the weather; *scutis* is Ablative of Separation. 9 **defuerit**: the perfect subjunctive is here used as a historical tense. 10 **quam quisque ab opere**, *etc.*: *to whatsoever place each one happened to come from the fortification.* 11 **quaeque** = *et quae*. The antecedent of *quae* is *haec*. 12 **ad haec**: *i.e. ad haec signa, by these.* Strict balance of the sentence would have required, *in hac parte et ad haec.* 13 **suis**: understand *signis.* 14 **ut**: *as.* 15 **diversae**: *being separated.* 16 **aliae alia in parte**: *some in one place, others in another;* 380. 17 **saepibus**: Ablative of Means. 18 **ut ante demonstravimus**: namely, p. 228, line 2 ff. 19 **interjectis**: *which were scattered here and there.* 20 **certa**

parte opus esset, prōviderī,[1] neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae[2] quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two legions on the left rout the Atrebates. Two in the centre rout the Viromandui. The remaining two are attacked by the Nervii.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut[3] in sinistrā parte aciē[4] cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs, cursū[5] ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs[6] ea[7] pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō[8] superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs[9] īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam[10] interfēcērunt. Ipsī[11] trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs, redintegrātō[12] proeliō, in fugam conjēcērunt. Item āliā[13] in parte dīversae[14] duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs[15] flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs[16] ferē castrīs ā fronte[17] et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs,[18] cum[19] in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima

---

subsidia: *i.e.* reserves in fixed places; the principal clause of the sentence begins here; *subsidia* is the subject of *poterant*.

[1] **provideri**: dependent upon *poterat* (impersonal) understood, to be supplied from *poterant*. [2] **fortunae quoque eventus varii**: *various vicissitudes of fortune also*. [3] **ut . . . constiterant**: *in accordance with their position, etc.*; literally, *just as they were posted* (*had taken their stand*). [4] **acie**: a rare form of the genitive. [5] **cursu ac lassitudine**: of two coördinated ideas the second is often merely explanatory of the first, as here. [6] **his**: 306, 3. [7] **ea pars**: *i.e.* that division of the enemy, namely, the Atrebates. [8] **ex loco superiore**: *i.e.* the Romans occupied the higher ground. [9] **conantes**: agreeing with the omitted object of *insecuti*. [10] **impeditam**: *i.e.* by the confusion of their retreat and the passage of the stream. [11] **ipsi**: namely, the Romans. [12] **redintegrato proelio**: the Ablative Absolute is explanatory of *resistentes*,—*renewing the fight and again resisting*. [13] **alia in parte**: namely, in the centre, directly in front of the camp. [14] **diversae**: *i.e.* some distance apart, not side by side, as ordinarily. [15] **in ipsis ripis**: *on the very bank*. [16] **totis fere castris**: *fere* very commonly stands after the word it modifies, thus separating the adjective from its noun. [17] **a fronte, a sinistra parte**: *in front, on the left side*. [18] **nudatis**: the very success of the four legions brought the two remaining ones into the gravest danger. [19] **cum consti-**

et nōn magnō[1] ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine, duce[2] Boduognātō, quī summam[3] imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō[4] latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum[5] castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The situation of the Romans becomes desperate.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque[6] armātūrae peditēs, quī cum[7] eīs[8] ūnā fuerant, quōs[9] prīmō[10] hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum[11] sē in castra reciperent, adversīs[12] hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ā decumānā[13] portā ac summō[14] jugō collis nostrōs[15] victōrēs flūmen[16] trānsīsse cōnspexe-

---

tisset: a causal clause explanatory of the statement *totis fere castris nudatis.* But the expression is somewhat inexact. The real reason why the camp was left exposed was that the two legions protecting its front (the 8th and 11th) along with two others protecting its left (the 9th and 10th) had advanced in pursuit of the routed Atrebates and the Viromandui, leaving only the right of the camp protected (by the 7th and 12th legions).

[1] **magno intervallo**: Ablative of Degree of Difference, depending upon the comparative notion implied in *ab ea.* [2] **duce Boduognato**: Ablative Absolute. [3] **summam imperi**: *i.e.* the chief command. [4] **ab aperto latere**: *on the exposed flank,* namely, the right. The expression originally applied to the individual soldier, who carried his shield in the left hand, thus leaving his right side exposed. [5] **summum castrorum locum**: *the height where the camp was,* literally, *the highest place of the camp; castrorum* is what is called an Appositional Genitive. [6] **levis armaturae pedites**: such as bowmen, slingers, *etc.;* Genitive of Quality; 323. [7] **cum una**: *along with.* [8] **eis**: the *equites.* [9] **quos**: its antecedent is *equites* and *pedites.* [10] **primo impetu pulsos (esse)**: namely, at the river, when the Gauls emerged from the woods and rushed forth to the attack. [11] **cum . . . reciperent**: in order to return to camp, they had to recross the stream and ascend the hill. [12] **adversis**: *face to face;* in predicate agreement with *hostibus;* for the dative, see 306, 3. [13] **a decumana porta**: the *porta decumana,* or decuman gate, was located at the rear of the Roman camp. [14] **ac summo jugo**: these words do not designate a different place from *decumana porta,* but are explanatory of it. The camp was on the upper slope of the hill, so that the decuman gate, being at the rear of the camp, was at the very crest of the elevation. [15] **nostros victores**: *our victorious troops.* [16] **flumen transisse**: in pursuit of the routed Atrebates, as described in chapter 23.

rant, praedandī[1] causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs[2] fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum,[3] quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur,[4] aliīque[5] aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī,[6] quōrum[7] inter Gallōs virtūtis[8] opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte[9] ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum[10] multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī,[11] legiōnēs[12] premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs[13] dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs[14] nostrīs rēbus, domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs[15] superātōsque, castrīs[16] impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar's heroic example saves the day.

25. Caesar ab[17] decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi[18] suōs urgērī, signīsque in ūnum locum collātīs, duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi[19] ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis[20]

---

[1] **praedandi causa**: the camp followers, seeing part of the enemy in flight, naturally assumed that the victory was complete, and hence set forth in quest of plunder. [2] **praecipites**: *precipitately;* agreeing with *calones.* [3] **eorum qui**, *etc.:* these were the drivers of the baggage-train guarded by the 13th and 14th legions, which were bringing up the rear. [4] **oriebatur**: singular verb with compound subject expressing a single idea. [5] **alii aliam in partem**: *some in one direction, others in another;* 380. [6] **Treveri**: here an adjective. [7] **quorum**: the relative refers not alone to the cavalry of the Treveri, but to the whole tribe. [8] **virtutis opinio**: *reputation for valor.* [9] **a civitate**: the state is conceived of as a person, hence the preposition. [10] **cum**: the conjunction, introducing *venissent.* [11] **compleri**, **premi**, *etc.;* dependent on *vidissent.* [12] **legiones**: namely, the 7th and the 12th. [13] **diversos**: the participle (from *diverto*), not the adjective. [14] **desperatis nostris rebus**: *despairing of our fortunes.* [15] **pulsos superatosque**: understand *esse.* [16] **castris impedimentisque**: governed by *potitos* (*esse*); 344, 1. [17] **ab**: *from,* in the local, not the temporal sense. [18] **ubi**: introducing *vidit.* [19] **sibi ipsos ad pugnam**, *etc.: hindered each other in fighting.* [20] **quartae cohortis**: the fourth cohort occupied the extreme left of the front line, a particularly exposed position; hence the casualties detailed by Caesar.

omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō[1] āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs (in hīs prīmipīlō[2] P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs[3] gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut jam sē sustinēre nōn posset); ubi vīdit reliquōs esse tardiōrēs[4] et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs,[5] dēsertō proeliō, excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque[6] ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem[7] esse in angustō, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset; scūtō[8] ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō[9] sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit, centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs, reliquōs[10] cohortātus mīlitēs signa[11] īnferre et manipulōs[12] laxāre jussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūjus adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō[13] sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam[14] in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Reinforcements arrive.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae jūxtā[15] cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum

---

[1] **signo amisso**: the loss of the standard was naturally felt as a disgrace. [2] **primipilo confecto**: the *primipilus* was properly the commander of the first maniple of the first cohort of a legion, but military custom gave him control not only over his own maniple and cohort, but to a certain extent over the entire legion. [3] **multis gravibusque** = *many severe.* [4] **tardiores**: *rather listless.* [5] **ab novissimis**: *at the rear.* [6] **neque subeuntes intermittere**: *and did not stop advancing*; *neque* is correlative with *et* in the next line. In the foregoing description notice how admirably the rapidly sketched details accord with the scene of confusion which Caesar is aiming to depict. [7] **rem esse in angusto**: *that matters had reached a critical pass*; literally, *were in a narrow place*; *angusto* is the adjective used substantively. [8] **scuto militi detracto**: *snatching a shield from a soldier*; *militi* is Dative of Separation. [9] **eo**: the adverb. [10] **reliquos milites**: object of *cohortatus.* [11] **signa inferre**: *i.e.* to advance. [12] **manipulos laxare**: *to open up the companies.* [13] **pro se quisque**: *each to the best of his ability.* [14] **etiam in extremis suis rebus**: *even in their desperate situation.* [15] **juxta**: *i.e.* near the 12th legion, of which Caesar has just been speaking.

monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs[1] conjungerent et conversa[2] signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent, nē āversī[3] ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum[4] duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū[5] incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et Titus Labiēnus castrīs[6] hostium potītus et ex locō[7] superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī[8] cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset,[9] quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur,[9] cognōvissent, nihil[10] ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The Romans defeat and almost annihilate the Nervii. Caesar spares the survivors.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent,[11] scūtīs[12] innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs[13] perterri-

---

[1] **legiones**: the 7th and the 12th. [2] **conversa signa . . . inferrent**: *face about and advance upon the enemy;* literally, *bear their changed standards;* Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; dependent upon *monuit* ('let them bear, etc.'). The nature of the evolution here mentioned is thoroughly obscure. As shown by the following *aversi*, the Roman legions evidently secured their own rear from attack. Very likely they stood back to back. [3] **aversi**: *in the rear;* literally, *turned away;* agreeing with the subject of *circumvenirentur.* [4] **legionum duarum**: the 13th and 14th. [5] **cursu incitato**: *at full speed.* [6] **castris hostium**: this was across the river, whither Labienus had advanced in pursuit of the Atrebates. [7] **ex loco superiore**: the high ground of the opposite bank gave Labienus a full view of the struggle going on around the camp of the Romans. [8] **qui cum**: *qui* refers to the soldiers of the 10th legion; *cum* introduces *cognovissent.* [9] **esset, versaretur**: indirect questions; 431. Note that *versaretur* agrees in number with its nearest subject. [10] **nihil . . . fecerunt**: *made all possible speed;* literally, *left nothing (of) undone in point of speed; reliqui* is a predicate genitive. [11] **procubuissent**: subjunctive by attraction to the following *redintegrarent.* [12] **scutis**: ablative with *innixi*, the regular construction with *innitor.* [13] **calones**: the subject of *occurrerent.*

tōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs[1] armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnae sē[2] legiōnāriīs mīlitibus[3] praeferrent.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī[4] eōrum cecidissent, proximī jacentibus[5] īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs[6] dējectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī[7] superessent, ut[8] ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent[9] et pīla[10] intercepta remitterent; ut[11] nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs jūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum, quae[12] facilia[13] ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, majōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs conjectōs dīxerāmus,[14] hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum[15] victōribus nihil impedītum,[16] victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī

---

[1] **inermes**: limiting *calones*. [2] **se . . . praeferrent**: *strove to show* (literally, *showed*) *themselves superior to the regular soldiers.* The cavalry was furnished mainly by the allies; less was ordinarily expected of it than of the legionaries. [3] **militibus**: Dative of Indirect Object with a compound of *prae*; 306, 3. [4] **primi**: *the foremost.* [5] **jacentibus insisterent**: *took their stand upon the fallen.* [6] **his**, *etc.:* in English we need a conjunction (*and*) to join this clause to the preceding; Asyndeton. [7] **qui superessent**: *the survivors.* The antecedent of *qui* is the subject of *conicerent; superessent* is attracted into the subjunctive. [8] **ut ex tumulo**: *from a mound, as it were;* namely, a mound of dead bodies. [9] **conicerent**: in the same construction as *insisterent* and *pugnarent; i.e. exhibited such valor that the survivors, etc.* [10] **pila intercepta remitterent**: when the *pilum* had once been hurled, its slender point usually bent, so that it could not be effectively returned by the enemy. The desperation of the Nervii is here emphasized by their frantic attempts to utilize these *pila.* [11] **ut non nequiquam,** *etc.: so that it ought not to be thought that men of so great bravery dared without reason* (*i.e.* without prospect of success) *to cross.* The emphasis of the clause rests upon *non nequiquam; ausos esse* is the subject of *deberet.* [12] **quae**: *things which;* the antecedent of *quae* is found in the preceding infinitives. [13] **facilia . . . redegerat**: *had rendered easy from being most difficult; facilia* is predicate accusative. [14] **dixeramus**: *i.e.* prior to the description of the battle. [15] **cum**: *since.* [16] **impeditum, tutum**: predicate adjectives with *nihil.*

supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt, et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs[1] ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus[2] misericordiā vidērētur,[3] dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī jussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut[4] ab injūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

Chapters 29–33. — Conflict with the Aduatuci.

The Aduatuci take refuge in a stronghold.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum[5] omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō[6] Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs, sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod[7] cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dējectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum[8] pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum[9] magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in[10] mūrō collocābant.[11]

Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs[12] Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter[13] in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere[14] ac portāre nōn poterant,

---

1 **ex sexcentis ad tres,** *etc.:* the Nervii shrewdly exaggerate their losses, in order to move Caesar's pity. 2 **usus**: *i.e. usus esse.* 3 **videretur**: here not *seem,* but *be seen.* 4 **ut prohiberent**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; object of *imperavit.* 5 **cum**: the conjunction. 6 **auxilio**: Dative of Purpose; 313. 7 **quod cum**: adversative, — *while this . . . (yet).* 8 **ducentorum pedum**: Genitive of Quality limiting *aditus; amplius,* as usual, does not affect the construction of the sentence. 9 **tum**: *at that time.* 10 **in muro**: *on the wall.* 11 **collocabant**: *i.e. they were engaged in placing* them. 12 **ex Cimbris Teutonis**: see note on p. 212, line 11. 13 **iter facerent**: *were making a raid.* 14 **agere, portare**: *agere,* literally *drive,* suggests that the *impedimenta* consisted partly of cattle and horses.

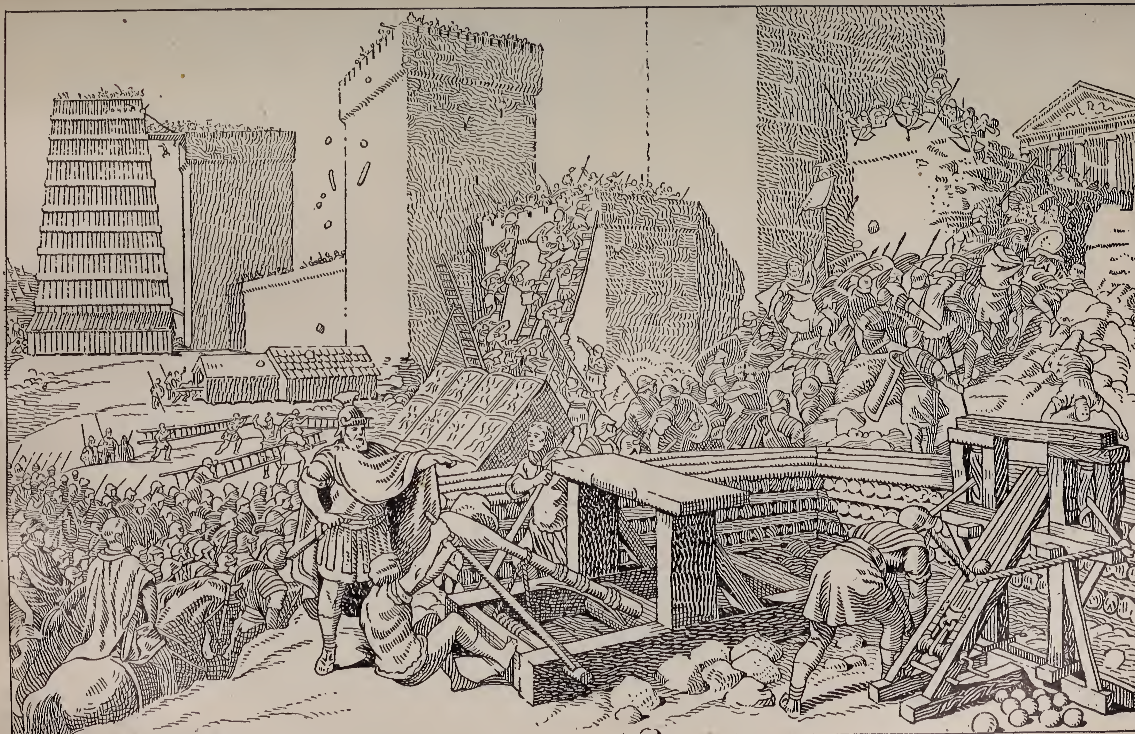
citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiam[1] ex suīs[2] ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā[3] relīquērunt. Hī[4] post eōrum[5] obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās[6] bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum[7] omnium pāce factā, hunc sibi domiciliō locum[8] dēlēgērunt.

Their contempt for the Roman siege works.

30. Ac prīmō adventū[9] exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum[10] XII, in circuitū XV mīlium[11] crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō[12] sēsē continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs[13] āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre[14] ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod[15] tanta māchinātiō ā tantō[16] spatiō īnstituerētur: Quibusnam[17] manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus[18] Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī[19] est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē collocāre posse cōnfīderent?[20]

---

[1] **custodiam ac praesidium**: *as a guard* (of the property) *and a garrison* (of the place); predicate accusatives. [2] **ex suis**: *from their number;* literally, *from their own* (people). The phrase limits *milia.* [3] **una**: *i.e.* along with the *impedimenta.* [4] **hi**: *i.e.* those left as a guard. [5] **eorum**: the Cimbri and Teutoni, who were defeated by Marius in 102 and 101 B.C. [6] **alias . . . defenderent**: *at one time waged offensive war, at another time defensive* (literally, *warded off war brought against them*). [7] **eorum, omnium**: *i.e.* all their enemies. [8] **locum**: *region.* [9] **adventu**: Ablative of Time. [10] **pedum XII**: *i.e.* twelve feet in height. [11] **XV milium**: *pedum,* not *passuum,* is to be understood. [12] **oppido**: *in the town;* but the ablative is one of Means. [13] **vineis, aggere, turrim**: see p. 223. [14] **irridere, increpitare**: Historical Infinitives. The Historical Infinitive is freely used in Latin as the equivalent of a past tense of the indicative. [15] **quod institueretur**: the reason in the minds of the Aduatuci; hence the subjunctive; 407. [16] **a tanto spatio**: *so far away; a* is an adverb; *tanto spatio* is Ablative of Degree of Difference. [17] **quibusnam**: *with what . . . pray?* [18] **omnibus Gallis**: *in the eyes of all the Gauls.* The case is dative. [19] **contemptui**: Dative of Purpose. [20] **confiderent**: questions in indirect discourse often stand in the subjunctive.



Attack on a Besieged City.

They surrender, but secretly retain weapons.

31. Ubi vērō movērī[1] et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī:[2] Nōn[3] sē exīstimāre, Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī[4] tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum[5] petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō[6] suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam[7] ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset,[8] Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē[9] sē armīs[10] dēspoliāret. Sibi[11] omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī[12] invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere, trāditīs[13] armīs, nōn possent. Sibi[14] praestāre, sī in eum[15] cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs[16] fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī,[17] quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.[18]

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, priusquam[19] mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nerviīs[20] fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque imperātū-

[1] **moveri**: as subject understand *turrim*. [2] **locuti**: for *locuti sunt*. [3] **non**: placed first for emphasis; it logically belongs with *sine*. [4] **qui possent**: *since they could*. [5] **unum**: *one thing;* explained by the clause *ne despoliaret*. [6] **pro**: *in accordance with*. [7] **quam audirent**: *i.e.* which they were continually hearing of. [8] **statuisset**, *etc.: if he should decide that the Aduatuci were to be spared*. [9] **ne despoliaret**: *let him not deprive them, etc.;* imperative clause in indirect discourse. [10] **armis**: Ablative of Separation. [11] **sibi**: with *inimicos*. [12] **virtuti**: for the dative, see 306, 2. [13] **traditis armis**: *if they should surrender their arms;* 359. [14] **sibi praestare**: *it was better for them*. [15] **in eum casum**: *to that pass*, namely, of being thus exposed to the vengeance of their neighbors. [16] **quamvis fortunam**: *any visitation whatever; quamvis* is the indefinite pronoun. [17] **pati, interfici**: subjects of the impersonal *praestare*. [18] **consuessent**: for *consuevissent*. [19] **priusquam . . . attigisset**: *i.e.* without waiting for a continuance of the siege operations; *attigisset* represents a future perfect indicative of direct statement. After the actual storming of a city began, a voluntary surrender was no longer possible. For the *aries*, see p. 13. [20] **in Nerviis**: *in the case of the Nervii*.

rum, nē[1] quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī injūriam īnferrent.

Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, illī sē,[2] quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā[3] multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, jactā, sīc ut prope summam[4] mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs, eō diē pāce[5] sunt ūsī.

Caesar thwarts their attempted treachery, and sells them into slavery.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre jussit, nē quam[6] noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus injūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique[7] indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus[8] intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguïtās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā[9] mimimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō[10] concursum est pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut[11] ā virīs fortibus

---

[1] **ne quam . . . inferrent**: *not to inflict any damage;* a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive. In these, as in Purpose Clauses, *ne quis* is regularly used instead of *ut nullus.* [2] **se facere dixerunt**: *said that they did,* or *would do.* We should have expected a future tense, but the present lends greater vividness to the narrative by suggesting immediate compliance. [3] **magna multitudine**: with *jacta.* [4] **summam muri aggerisque altitudinem**: *the full height of the wall and agger; i.e.* the arms filled the space between the fortifications and the head of the agger, which had already neared the walls. [5] **pace sunt usi**: *observed peace.* [6] **quam**: the indefinite pronoun, *any.* [7] **denique**: *at least.* [8] **viminibus intextis**: *woven willow-work;* like *cortice,* governed by *ex.* [9] **qua**: *where.* [10] **eo concursum est**: *they ran thither;* 287. [11] **ut a viris fortibus pugnari debuit**: *as brave men were bound to fight; debuit* and *pugnari* are impersonal.

in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla jacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā[1] virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad[2] hominum mīlibus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum rejectī sunt. Postrīdiē ejus diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum jam[3] dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ejus oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs, quī ēmerant, capitum[4] numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium[5] quīnquāgintā trium.

Chapters 34, 35. — Concluding Events of the Year.

Publius Crassus reduces several tribes along the coast.

34. Eōdem tempore ā Pūbliō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitās,[6] Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae[7] sunt maritimae cīvitātēs[8] Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

Caesar places the army in winter quarters. A thanksgiving commemorating his victories is decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī[9] Galliā pācātā, tanta hūjus bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent,[10] lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī[11] sē obsidēs datūrās[12] imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam[13]

---

[1] **in una virtute**: *in valor alone.* [2] **ad**: *about.* [3] **jam**: *longer.* [4] **capitum**: *persons.* [5] **milium quinquaginta trium**: *as being fifty-three thousand;* predicate genitive. [6] **Coriosolitās**: Greek accusative plural. [7] **quae**: the relative is attracted to the gender of the predicate noun. [8] **civitates**: *nations, tribes,* as often in Caesar. [9] **omni Gallia pacata**: *i.e.* all those portions which offered organized resistance to the Romans. [10] **incolerent**: subjunctive by attraction to *mitterentur.* [11] **qui pollicerentur**: a Relative Clause of Purpose. [12] **se daturas, facturas (esse)**: the speakers identify themselves with their *nationes;* hence the feminine gender. Note the Asyndeton in *daturas, facturas.* [13] **in Italiam**: *i.e.* cisalpine Gaul, one of Caesar's provinces.

Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī jussit.

Ipse, in Carnutēs,[1] Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque[2] cīvitātēs propinquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs[3] Caesaris in diēs quīndecim supplicātiō[4] dēcrēta est, quod[5] ante id tempus accidit nūllī.[6]

---

[1] **Carnutes, Andes, Turonos**: these names survive in the town names Chartres, Anjou, and Tours. [2] **quaeque civitates** = *et in eas civitates quae.* [3] **ex litteris**: *in accordance with despatches.* [4] **supplicatio**: *a public thanksgiving.* Prior to this no *supplicatio* had ever been decreed for a longer period than twelve days. [5] **quod**: its antecedent is the previous statement. [6] **nulli**: for *nemini, i.e.* the adjective for the substantive. Note the emphasis produced by placing this word at the end of the sentence.

GENERAL LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

Note. — Of the twelve hundred words in this Vocabulary, only about two-thirds are employed in the Lessons of the body of the book (see Preface). The remainder occur in the Second Book of Caesar. Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the numeral 1 following the present indicative.

A., abbreviation for Aulus, *Aulus.*
ā, ab, prep. w. abl., *from; by.*
abdō, ere, didī, ditus, *hide.*
abeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *go away; pass.*
absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be absent, be distant* (§ 252).
ac (atque), *and, and also; than;* ac is not used before vowels.
accēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *draw near, approach; be added to.*
accidō, ere, idī, *happen.*
accipiō, ere, ēpī, eptus, *receive.*
acclīvis, e, *sloping.*
acclīvitās, ātis, f., *ascent, slope, rise.*
accommodō, 1, *adjust.*
accurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run to, run up; hasten.*
accūsō, 1, *accuse.*
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, vigorous, keen, severe.*
acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile.*
aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle.*
ācriter, *sharply, fiercely.*
ad, prep. w. acc., *to, towards, against; for* (denoting purpose); *near; at; according to.* As adv., *about.*
adaequō, 1, *equal.*
addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, bring; lead on, impel.*
adeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *go to, visit, approach.*
adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *hurl, drive.*
aditus, ūs, m., *approach, access.*
adjuvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus, *help.*
administrō, 1, *perform, execute, carry out.*
admodum, *quite, very much.*
admoneō, ēre, uī, itus, *remind, warn.*
adolēscō, ere, lēvī, *grow up.*
adorior, īrī, ortus sum, *attack.*
adsum, adesse, adfuī, *be present, be at hand* (§ 252).
Aduatucī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aduatuci*, a Belgian tribe.
adulēscēns, centis, m., *young man.*
adveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *arrive.*
adventus, ūs, m., *arrival.*
adversārius, iī, m., *adversary.*
adversum, adversus, prep. w. acc., *against.*
adversus, a, um, *adverse; in front, facing.*
aedificium, ī (iī), n., *building.*
aegrē, *with difficulty.*
aequāliter, *evenly, uniformly.*
aequus, qua, quum, *level, just.*
aestās, tātis, f., *summer.*
aestuārium, ī, n., *estuary, marsh.*
aetās, tātis, f., *age, time of life.*

afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring* (§ 264).
affīnitās, tātis, f., *relationship by marriage.*
ager, agrī, m., *field, land.*
agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart; material for an agger.*
aggredior, ī, gressus sum, *attack.*
agmen, minis, n., *army (on the march), column.*
agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead, bring up, advance, do; parley.*
agricola, ae, m., *farmer.*
alacer, cris, cre, *eager.*
aliās, *at another time.* aliās . . . aliās, *at one time . . . at another.*
aliēnus, a, um, *of others, of another; unfavorable.*
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., *some* (§ 146).
aliquis, aliquid, *some one, something* (§ 146).
aliter, *otherwise.*
alius, a, ud, *other, another, else* (§ 83).
Allobrogēs, um, *the Allobroges,* a Gallic tribe.
alter, era, erum, *the other; second* (§ 83).
altitūdō, inis, f., *height; depth.*
altus, a, um, *high, deep;* as noun, altum, ī, n., *the deep, the deep sea.*
Ambiānī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Ambiani,* a Belgian tribe.
amīcē, adv., *in a friendly manner.*
amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship.*
amīcus, ī, m., *friend.*
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *lose.*
amō, 1, *love.*
amplificō, 1, *enlarge, extend, increase.*
amplius, adv., *more.*
amplus, a, um, *ample, glorious.*
an, interrog. particle, *or; whether.*
ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*
Andecumborius, ī, m., *Andecumborius,* a Gaul.
Andēs, ium, m. pl., *the Andes,* a Gallic tribe.
angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *a narrow pass.*
angustus, a, um, *narrow.*
animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *notice.*
animal, mālis, n., *animal.*
animus, ī, m., *mind, soul; courage, heart; spirit, disposition, feelings, temper.*
annus, ī, m., *year.*
ante, prep. w. acc., *before, in front of;* adv., *before, ago, previously.*
anteā, *previously, before.*
antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *precede.*
antequam, conj., *before.*
antīquitus, adv., *in former times, long ago, anciently.*
antīquus, a, um, *ancient.*
apertus, a, um, *open, clear.*
appellō, 1, *name, call.*
appropinquō, 1, *approach.*
Aprīlis, e, adj., *of April.*
apud, prep. w. acc., *among, at, near, with, at the home of.*
aqua, ae, f., *water.*
Aquītānī, ōrum, m. pl., *Aquitanians,* a Gallic tribe.
Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania,* a district of Gaul.
Arar, is, m., *the Arar,* a river; the modern Saône.
arbitror, trārī, trātus sum, *reckon, estimate, consider.*
arbor, oris, f., *tree.*
arcessō, ere, īvī, ītus, *summon.*
arduus, a, um, *steep.*
ariēs, etis, m., *ram; battering-ram.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus*, a king of the Germans.
arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.
armātūra, ae, f., *equipment*.
armātus, a, um, *armed*.
armō, 1, *arm*.
arrogantia, ae, f., *arrogance*.
arx, arcis, f., *citadel*.
ascendō, ere, endī, ēnsus, *ascend*.
ascēnsus, ūs, m., *ascent*.
at, *but*.
Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., *Athens*.
atque, *and*, *and also*; see ac.
Atrebātēs, um, m. pl., *the Atrebates*, a Belgian tribe.
Atticus, ī, m., *Atticus*, a friend of Cicero.
attingō, ere, attigī, attāctus, *touch*, *border on*.
attulī, perf. of afferō.
auctōritās, tātis, f., *authority*, *influence*.
audācter, *courageously*, *bravely*, *boldly*.
audāx, gen. audācis, *courageous*.
audeō, ēre, ausus sum; semi-dep., *dare*.
audiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *hear*, *hear of*.
aufugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee*.
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase* (tr.).
Aulercī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Aulerci*, a Gallic tribe.
Aulus, ī, m., *Aulus*, a man's name.
Auruncul̄eius, ī, m., *Aurunculeius*, a man's name.
aut, *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.
autem, *however*; *but*.
auxilium, ī (iī), n., *aid*, *help*; in pl. auxilia, ōrum, n., *auxiliary troops*, *auxiliaries*.
Avāricum, ī, n., *Avaricum*, a Gallic town.
āvertō, ere, tī, versus, *avert*, *turn away*, *turn aside*.
Axona, ae, m., a river; the modern Aisne.

Bacēnis, is, f., *Bacenis*, a forest.
Baculus, ī, m., *Baculus*, a Roman centurion.
Baleārēs, um, m. pl., inhabitants of the Balearic Isles; as adj., *Balearic*.
barba, ae, f., *beard*.
barbarus, ī, m., *a barbarian*; adj., us, a, um, *barbarian*.
beātus, a, um, *happy*.
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *Belgians*, a Gallic tribe.
bellō, 1, *make war*, *carry on war*.
Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Bellóvaci*, a Belgian tribe.
bellum, ī, n., *war*.
bene, adv., *well* (§ 109).
beneficium, ī (iī), n., *kindness*.
Bibrax, actis, f., *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi.
Bibulus, ī, m., *Bibulus*, a man's name.
bīduum, ī, n., *two days*.
biennium, ī, n., *two years*.
Boduognātus, ī, m., *Boduognatus*, a chieftain of the Nervii.
Bōjī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Boji*, an ancient tribe.
bonus, a, um, *good*; in pl., bona, ōrum, n., *property*.
Brātuspantium, i, n., *Bratuspantium*, a Gallic town.
brevis, e, *short*, *brief*; brevī, *within a short time*.
brevitās, ātis, f., *shortness*; *low stature*.
Britannia, ae, f., *Britain*.

C., abbreviation for Gāius, *Gaius*.
cadāver, is, n., *corpse*, *dead body*.

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall.*
caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*
Caerōsī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Caerosi,* a Belgian tribe.
Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*
calamitās, tātis, f., *calamity, disaster.*
Caletī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Caleti,* a Belgian tribe.
cālō, ōnis, m., *camp-follower.*
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take; adopt; capture.*
captīvus, ī, m., *captive, prisoner.*
caput, itis, n., *head; person.*
Carnutēs, um, m. pl., *the Carnutes,* a Gallic tribe.
carrus, ī, m., *cart, wagon.*
cārus, a, um, *dear.*
Cassiānus, a, um, *Cassian; pertaining to Cassius.*
castellum, ī, n., *fort, redoubt.*
castra, ōrum, n. pl., *a camp.*
cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, accident; misfortune; plight.*
catēna, ae, f., *chain.*
Catilīna, ae, m., *Catiline.*
causa, ae, f., *cause, ground, reason; condition;* causā, abl., *for the sake of;* the dependent genitive precedes causā.
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *yield, withdraw, retreat.*
celer, eris, e, *swift.*
celeritās, tātis, f., *speed, swiftness.*
celeriter, *quickly.*
cēlō, 1, *conceal.*
Celtae, ārum, m. pl., *Celts.*
cēnsus, ūs, m., *census.*
centum, *hundred,* indecl.
centuriō, ōnis, m., *centurion* (commander of a hundred men).
cernō, ere, *perceive.*
certus, a, um, *sure, certain, definite;* comp. certior, in phrase certior fierī, *be informed;* certiōrem facere, *inform.*
cēterī, ae, a, *the rest; the others.*
Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Cicero.*
Cimbrī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Cimbrians,* a Germanic tribe.
circiter, adv., *about.*
circuitus, ūs, m., *circuit.*
circumeō, īre, iī, itus, *go around, surround.*
circumiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *throw around; place around.*
circummūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, *surround by a wall, protect.*
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *surround.*
cis, prep. w. acc., *this side of.*
citerior, ius, comp. adj., *nearer, hither.*
citrā, prep. w. acc., *this side of.*
cīvis, is, m., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*
cīvitās, tātis, f., *state.*
clam, *secretly.*
clāmor, ōris, m., *shout, shouting.*
clārus, a, um, *clear, loud; distinguished.*
classis, classis, f., *fleet.*
claudō, ere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close; bring up.*
clēmēns, gen. entis, *merciful.*
clēmentia, ae, f., *clemency, mercy.*
Cn., abbreviation of Gnaeus, *Gnaeus,* a man's name.
coacervō, 1, *pile up.*
coepī, coepisse, *began, have begun* (§ 281). Perf. also coeptus sum.
cōgitō, 1, *think.*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, *learn;* cognōvī, *I know.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, *force, compel; collect.*
cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (division of a legion).

cohortātiō, ōnis, f., *encouragement, cheering.*
cohortor, 1, *exhort, cheer, encourage.*
collātus, perf. pass. participle of cōnferō.
collēga, ae, m., *colleague.*
collis, is, m., *hill.*
collocō, 1, *place, arrange, station.*
colloquium, ī (iī), n., *conference.*
colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, *confer.*
commeātus, ūs, m., *supplies.*
commemorō, 1, *recount.*
committō, ere, mīsī, missus, *bring together;* with proelium or pugnam, *to join battle.*
commodē, *conveniently, readily.*
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, stir up, alarm, excite; induce.*
commūniō, īre, iī, ītus, *strongly fortify.*
commūnis, e, *common.*
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change.*
comparō, 1, *get ready.*
compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *drive.*
comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, *find out.*
compleō, ēre, plēvī, plētus, *fill up.*
complūrēs, plūra, gen. ium, *very many.*
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *grant.*
concīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *cut to pieces.*
conciliō, 1, *reconcile, win over.*
concilium, ī (iī), n., *council.*
concurrō, ere, ī, cursum, *run together.*
concursus, ūs, m., *a running together.*
condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*
Condrūsī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Condrusi,* a Belgian tribe.
condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead together, bring together; hire.*
cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *bring together;* sē cōnferre, *betake one's self* (§ 264).
cōnfertus, a, um, *packed together, dense, crowded.*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *finish, complete, prepare; muster; exhaust.*
cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, *trust,* semi-dep. (§ 306, 2).
cōnfīrmō, 1, *establish, confirm; encourage; affirm, declare.*
cōnflīgō, ere, flīxī, flīctum, *contend, fight.*
congredior, ī, gressus sum, *meet, encounter.*
coniciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *hurl; cast; put.*
conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *join, unite.*
conjūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*
conjūrō, 1, *take oath together; form a league; conspire.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *endeavor, attempt.*
cōnsanguineus, a, um, *of the same blood; kindred.* As noun, *kinsman.*
cōnscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write together; enroll.*
cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *follow up.*
cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., *agreement.*
cōnsentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsūrus, *agree with; combine, unite.*
cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow up, overtake; attain, acquire.*
cōnservō, 1, *preserve, save, spare.*
cōnsīdō, ere, ēdī, essus, *settle, camp.*
cōnsilium, ī (iī), n., *plan, design, purpose; council; advice.*
cōnsimilis, e, *like, exactly like.*
cōnsistō, ere, stitī, *stand, take a stand; stand one's ground; consist; depend on.*
cōnspectus, ūs, m., *view, sight.*
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *see.*

cōnspicor, ārī, ātus sum, *catch sight of, observe.*

cōnstanter, *steadfastly, uniformly.*

cōnstat, impers., *it is evident* (§ 287).

cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *place, station; decide, determine.*

cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus, *become accustomed;* cōnsuēvī, *I am accustomed, am wont.*

cōnsuētūdō, inis, f., *custom.*

cōnsul, ulis, m., *consul.*

cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *use up, consume.*

contemptus, ūs, m., *contempt, object of contempt.*

contendō, ere, tendī, tentum, *hurry, hasten; contend; strive, struggle.*

contentus, a, um, *contented.*

continenter, *continuously.*

contineō, ēre, uī, *confine, hem in, hold, hold in check.*

contrā, prep. w. acc., *against, opposite.* As adv., *against, in opposition.*

contrārius, a, um, *contrary to, opposite.*

contrōversia, ae, f., *controversy.*

contumēlia, ae, f., *affront, insult.*

conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come together, assemble; meet;* convenit, *it is agreed upon.*

convertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn, turn about.*

convocō, 1, *call together.*

cōpia, ae, f., *plenty;* in pl. cōpiae, ārum, *troops, forces.*

Coriosolitēs, um, m. pl., *the Coriosolites,* a Gallic tribe.

cornū, ūs, n., *horn;* in military sense, *wing* of an army.

corpus, oris, n., *body.*

cortex, icis, m., *bark.*

cotīdiē, *every day, daily.*

Cotta, ae, m., *Cotta,* a man's name.

Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus,* a man's name.

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, thick, dense.*

crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe* (§ 306, 2).

Crētēs, um, m. pl., *Cretans;* as adj., *Cretan.*

cruciātus, ūs, m., *torture.*

culpō, 1, *blame.*

1. cum, prep. w. abl., *with.*

2. cum, conj., *when; because, since; though;* cum . . . tum, *not only . . . but also;* cum prīmum, *as soon as.*

cūnctus, a, um, *all.*

cupidus, a, um, *fond, eager.*

cupiō, ere, cupīvī, cupītus, *desire, be eager.*

cūr, adv., *why?*

cūrō, 1, *care for, take care of.*

cursus, ūs, m., *running; pace, course.*

cūstōdia, ae, f., *a guard; custody.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *concerning; of, from.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe;* with a dependent infinitive, *ought;* pass., *to be due.*

dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *withdraw.*

decem, indecl., *ten.*

dēcernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, *decree; decide* (by combat), *fight.*

dēcertō, 1, *fight, fight it out.*

decimus, a, um, *tenth.*

dēcipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *deceive.*

dēclīvis, e, *sloping.*

decumānus, a, um, *decuman,* in decumāna porta, *the decuman gate* in a Roman camp; see Notes.

dēcurrō, ere, currī, or cucurrī, cursūrus, *run down; rush, hasten.*

dēditīcius, a, um, *that has surrendered.* As noun, dēditīciī, *prisoners of war.*
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender.*
dēdō, dere, didī, dēditus, *give up, surrender.*
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead away; remove; conduct; lead, bring.*
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt.*
dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus, *defend; ward off.*
dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f., *defence.*
defēnsor, ōris, m., *defender.*
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (§ 264), *confer upon, bestow; report.*
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *fail; revolt.*
dēiciō, ere, dējēcī, dējectus, *dislodge.*
deinde, *then, afterwards.*
dējectus, ūs, m., *descent, slope, declivity.*
dēlātus, perf. pass. participle of dēferō.
dēlectō, 1, *delight.*
dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *wipe out; destroy.*
dēlīberō, 1, *deliberate, consult.*
dēligō, 1, *tie to, fasten to.*
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose.*
dēmōnstrō, 1, *point out, show.*
dēnique, *finally; in short, at least.*
dēnsus, a, um, *dense, thick.*
dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *put aside, place, put, leave.*
dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum, *lay waste.*
dēprecor, 1, *entreat, beg.*
dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus, *abandon, desert.*
dēsistō, ere, stitī, *cease.*
dēspērō, 1, *despair, despair of.*
dēspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *despise.*
dēspoliō, 1, *strip, deprive.*

dēsum, dĕesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *be wanting, fail* (§ 252).
dēterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *frighten off; deter, prevent.*
dētrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw off; snatch.*
dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss, damage, harm.*
deus, ī, m., *god.*
dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come, arrive.*
dexter, tra, trum, *right;* as subst. (sc. manus), *right hand.*
diciō, ōnis, f., *sway.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus, *say; utter; appoint; call.*
diēs, ēī, m. or f., *day.*
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātum, *differ* (§ 264).
difficilis, e, *difficult.*
difficultās, ātis, f., *difficulty.*
dignitās, tātis, f., *dignity.*
dignus, a, um, *worthy.*
dīligenter, *carefully, scrupulously.*
dīligentia, ae, f., *diligence.*
dīmētior, īrī, mēnsus sum, *measure off.*
dīmicō, 1, *contend, fight.*
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *let go, lose; dismiss, disband.*
dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *plunder.*
dīruō, ere, ruī, rutus, *tear down, destroy.*
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart, withdraw.*
discessus, ūs, m., *departure.*
disciplīna, ae, f., *discipline.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *station here and there; distribute.*
dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement.*
dissipātus, a, um, *scattered.*
distineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold apart, keep apart.*
diū, adv., *a long time.*

diūtius, comp. of diū.
dīversus, a, um, *different; separated.*
Dīvicō, ōnis, m., *Divico*, a Helvetian chieftain.
dīvidō, ere, īsī, īsus, *divide.*
Dīvitiācus, ī, m., *Divitiacus*, a man's name.
dō, dăre, dedī, dătus, *give*, *render; put*, *set.*
doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, *teach*, *show.*
dolor, ōris, m., *grief.*
domesticus, a, um, *of one's home, one's own.*
domicilium, ī, n., *home*, *abode.*
dominor, 1, *be master, rule.*
Domitius, ī (iī), m., *Domitius*, a man's name.
domus, ūs, f., *house*, *home.*
dōnec, *until.*
dōnō, 1, *present.*
dōnum, ī, n., *gift.*
dubitō, 1, *doubt*, *be in doubt; hesitate, waver.*
ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead*, *draw.*
dum, *while; as long as; until.*
Dumnorīx, rīgis, m., *Dumnorix*, a chief of the Haedui.
duo, duae, duo, *two* (§ 114, 2).
duodecim, indecl., *twelve.*
duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth.*
duodēvīgintī, indecl., eighteen.
duplex, icis, *double.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader.*

ē, ex, prep. w. abl., *from, out of, of;* ē is not used before vowels or h.
Eburōnēs, um, m. pl., *the Eburones*, a Belgian tribe.
ēditus, a, um, *elevated*, *lofty*, *high.*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead forth.*
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *make, render; do, bring about.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *escape.*
ego, meī, *I.*
ēgredior, gredī, gressus sum, *march out.*
ēgregiē, *remarkably*, *excellently.*
ēiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *thrust out;* sē ēicere, *rush forth.*
ejus modī, *of that kind* (§ 323).
ēlātus, perf. pass. participle of efferō.
ēlēctus, a, um, *chosen*, *picked.*
ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *hurl, discharge.*
emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy.*
ēnāscor, ī, nātus sum, *grow out.*
enim, *for;* cannot begin a sentence.
eō, adv., *thither, to that place.*
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go, march,* (§ 280).
eōdem, *to the same place.*
eques, itis, m., *horseman;* in pl., *cavalry, horsemen.*
equester, tris, tre, *equestrian; cavalry* (as adj.).
equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equus, ī, m., *horse.*
errō, 1, *err, be mistaken.*
ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally.*
Esuviī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Esuvii*, a Gallic tribe.
et, *and;* et . . . et, *both . . . and;* as adv., *also*, *even.*
etiam, *also; even.*
ēventus, ūs, m., *outcome*, *vicissitude.*
ēvertō, ere, tī, sus, *overturn, destroy.*
ex, prep. w. abl., *out of;* see ē.
exagitō, 1, *harass.*
exanimātus, a, um, *breathless.*
exaudiō, īre, īvī, ītus, *hear, hear plainly.*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *leave, depart from.*
excitō, 1, *stir up*, *rouse.*

excursiō, ōnis, f., *sally*.
exeō, īre, iī, itum, *go forth*, *go out* (§ 280).
exercitō, 1, *train*, *practise*.
exercitus, ūs, m., *army*.
exiguitās, ātis, f., *scantiness*.
eximius, a, um, *extraordinary*.
exīstimō, 1, *think*, *consider*.
exitium, ī (iī), n., *destruction*.
exitus, ūs, m., *exit*, *passage*.
expedītus, a, um, *unencumbered*, *light-armed*; *easy*.
expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *drive out*, *banish*.
experior, īrī, pertus sum, *try*, *test*.
explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout*.
explōrō, 1, *examine*, *discover*, *find out*.
expugnō, 1, *take by storm*.
exsistō, ere, stitī, *arise*.
exspectō, 1, *expect*, *await*.
exstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *build*, *throw up*.
extrā, prep. w. acc., *outside*, *beyond*.
extrēmus, a, um, *extreme*, *outermost*; *end of*.

facile, *easily*.
facilis, e, *easy*.
facinus, inoris, n., *crime*, *deed*.
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *make*, *do*, *execute*; pass. irreg. (§ 275).
factiō, ōnis, f., *faction*.
facultās, tātis, f., *supply*.
fallō, ere, fefellī, *deceive*, *disappoint*, *balk*.
falsus, a, um, *false*, *mistaken*.
fāma, ae, f., *reputation*, *report*.
fastīgātus, a, um, *sloping*.
fēlīx, gen. fēlīcis, *fortunate*, *happy*.
ferāx, gen. ferācis, *fertile*.
ferē, *almost*, *about*, *practically*.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear*, *carry*, *bring*; *lift*, *raise*; *lend* (of help); *say*.
fertilitās, ātis, f., *fertility*.
ferus, a, um, *wild*, *savage*, *fierce*.
fidēs, eī, f., *fidelity*, *loyalty*, *protection*; *confidence*, *allegiance*.
fīdūcia, ae, f., *confidence*.
fīlia, ae, f., *daughter*.
fīlius, ī (iī), m., *son*.
fīnis, is, m., *end*; *boundary*; in pl., *territory*.
fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring*, *near*; as noun, fīnitimī, *neighbors*.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *become*, *be made*; *occur*, *happen*; pass. of faciō (§ 275).
fīrmus, a, um, *firm*, *strong*.
flāgitō, 1, *demand*.
flūmen, inis, n., *river*.
fore, fut. infin. of sum (§ 163, footnote 2).
fors, fortis, f., *chance*.
forte, *by chance*.
fortis, e, *brave*, *valiant*.
fortiter, *bravely*.
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune*; pl. fortūnae, ārum, f., *fortune* (possessions).
fossa, ae, f., *ditch*, *trench*.
frāter, tris, m., *brother*.
fremitus, ūs, m., *uproar*, *noise*.
frōns, ntis, f., *forehead*; *front*.
frūmentārius, a, um, *pertaining to grain*; rēs frūmentāria, *grain*, *grain supplies*.
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain*.
frūstrā, adv., *in vain*.
fuga, ae, f., *flight*.
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee*, *escape from*.
fugō, 1, *put to flight*.
fūmus, ī, m., *smoke*.
funditor, ōris, m., *slinger*.
furor, ōris, m., *frenzy*, *fury*, *excitement*.

fūrtum, ī, n., *theft.*
futūrus, a, um, future participle of sum.

Gāius, ī, m., *Gaius*, a man's name. (Abbreviated C.)
Galba, ae, m., *Galba*, a man's name.
galea, ae, f., *helmet.*
Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic.*
Gallus, ī, m., *a Gaul.*
Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
Genava, ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges.
generātim, *by tribes.*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe; gens* (division of the Roman people).
genus, eris, n., *stock, family, kind.*
Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, *carry, wear, carry on, perform;* with bellum, *to wage;* of office, *to hold.*
gladius, ī (iī), m., *sword.*
Gnaeus, ī, m., *Gnaeus*, a man's name. (Abbreviated Cn.)
grātia, ae, f., *influence.*
grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome; grateful.*
gravis, e, *heavy, laden; difficult; severe, serious.*

habeō, ēre, habuī, habitus, *have, possess, hold; consider, regard;* of a speech, *deliver.*
hāc, *by this way, here.*
Haeduī, ōrum, m., *Haedui*, a Gallic tribe.
Haeduus, ī, m., *a Haeduan.*
Helvētiī, ōrum, m., *Helvetii*, a Celtic tribe.
hīberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter-quarters.*
Hibērus, ī, m., *the Hiberus* (modern *Ebro*), a river in Spain.
1. hīc, haec, hōc, pron., *this.*
2. hīc, adv., *here, at this place.*
hiemō, 1, *pass the winter.*
hiems, is, f., *winter.*
Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
hodiē, *to-day.*
homō, minis, m., *man.*
honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
hortor, ārī, ātus sum, *exhort, urge.*
hostis, is, m., *enemy;* especially frequent in pl., *the enemy.*
hūc, *hither.*

ibi, *there, in that place.*
Iccius, ī, m., *Iccius*, a Gaul.
īdem, eadem, idem, *the same.*
identidem, *again and again.*
idōneus, a, um, *suitable, adapted, fit.*
Īdūs, uum, f. pl., *the Ides*, the 13th of the month, but the 15th of March, May, July, and October.
igitur, *therefore, accordingly; now.* (Stands usually after first word in clause.)
ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly.*
īgnis, is, m., *fire.*
ignōminia, ae, f., *ignominy, disgrace.*
ille, illa, illud, *that; that one; he, she, it.*
Īllyricum, ī, n., *Illyricum*, a country lying on the eastern shore of the Adriatic Sea.
imber, imbris, m., *rain-storm.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
impedīmentum, ī, n., *hindrance;* in pl., *baggage.*
impediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *impede, hinder.*
impedītus, a, um, *hindered, hampered, embarrassed.*
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *impel.*
imperātor, tōris, m., *commander.*
imperātum, ī, n., *command.*

imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced.*
imperium, ī (iī), *rule, sway, control, command; order; government.*
imperō, 1, *command; demand; order; reign; levy.*
impetrō, 1, *secure one's request.*
impetus, ūs, m., *onset, attack.*
implōrō, 1, *entreat.*
imprōvīsus, a, um, *unexpected;* dē imprōvīsō, *unexpectedly.*
in, prep. w. abl., *in, on,* denoting rest in a place; *among;* w. acc., *into, in, to, against, towards; under.*
incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus, *set on fire.*
incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*
incidō, ere, idī, *fall upon; befall, occur; fall in with.*
incīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *cut into.*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *begin.*
incitō, 1, *set in motion, quicken; urge on, encourage.*
incola, ae, m., *inhabitant.*
incolō, ere, coluī, cultus, *inhabit, dwell.*
incolumis, e, *unharmed, uninjured.*
incommodum, ī, n., *disaster.*
incrēdibilis, e, *incredible.*
increpitō, 1, *blame, chide; mock, taunt.*
incursus, ūs, m., *onset.*
incūsō, 1, *accuse, find fault with.*
inde, *thence, then.*
indignitās, ātis, f., *indignity, insult.*
indīligenter, *carelessly.*
indolēs, is, f., *nature; character.*
indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead in; draw in; draw; cover.*
induō, ere, uī, ūtus, *put on.*
ineō, īre, iī, itus, *enter upon; begin;* cōnsilium inīre, *form a plan* (§ 280).
inermis, e, *unarmed.*
īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, *bring in, import; bring upon; bring against, inflict; produce* (§ 264).
īnferior, us, *lower, inferior* (§ 102, 2).
īnfimus, a, um, superl. of īnferior (§ 102, 2); *bottom, at the foot.*
īnfīrmus, a, um, *weak.*
īnflectō, ere, flexī, flexus, *bend, bend over.*
īnfluō, ere, uxī, uxum, *flow into.*
ingredior, ī, gressus sum, *march into, enter.*
inimīcus, a, um, *hostile.* As noun, inimīcus, ī, m., *a (personal) enemy.*
inīquitās, ātis, f., *unfavorableness, difficulty.*
inīquus, a, um, *unfavorable.*
initium, ī (iī), n., *beginning.*
injūria, ae, f., *wrong, injustice.*
innītor, ī, nīxus or nīsus sum, *lean on, rest on.*
inopia, ae, f., *lack, need.*
īnsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow after.*
īnsidiae, ārum, f., pl., *ambush; plots; treachery.*
īnsigne, is, n., *device, decoration.*
īnsistō, ere, īnstitī, *stand upon.*
īnstāns, pres. participle of īnstō.
īnstar, indecl. n., *likeness;* w. gen., *like.*
īnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *set up; institute, appoint.*
īnstitūtum, ī, n., *institution.*
īnstō, āre, itī, *press on, be eager.*
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, *draw up, arrange; fit out.*
īnsula, ae, f., *island.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *know, understand.*
inter, prep. w. acc., *among, between, in the midst of.*

intercēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *go between; lie between, intervene.*
intercipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *intercept.*
intereā, *in the meanwhile.*
intereō, īre, iī, itūrus, *perish.*
interest, *it concerns*, impers., from intersum.
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *kill.*
intericiō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *throw between; place between, plant between.*
interim, *in the meanwhile.*
intermittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *let pass; stop, cease, interrupt.*
interneciō, ōnis, f., *destruction, annihilation.*
interscindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *tear down.*
intersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be present at;* interest, impers., *it concerns.*
intervāllum, ī, n., *interval, distance.*
intexō, ere, texuī, textus, *weave.*
intrā, prep. w. acc., *within.*
intrō, 1, *enter.*
intrōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead in.*
intrōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *let in.*
intrōrsus, adv., *within.*
inūsitātus, a, um, *unwonted.*
inūtilis, e, *useless.*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *find.*
inveterāscō, ere, *grow old, become established.*
invideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *envy.*
invītus, a, um, *unwilling.*
ipse, a, um, *self.*
irrīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *deride, ridicule.*
is, ea, id, *that; he, she, it;* pl., *they.*
iste, a, ud, *that; that of yours.*
ita, *so* (of manner); *as.*
Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*
itaque, *accordingly, and so.*
item, *likewise.*
iter, itineris, n., *journey; march; way;* iter facere, *march; travel.*
iterum, *again.*

jaceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *lie, recline.*
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus, *hurl, throw; throw up.*
jam, *already, now.*
Jāniculum, ī, n., the hill *Janiculum.*
jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussus, *order.*
jūdicō, 1, *judge, adjudge.*
jugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge* (of mountains).
jūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden.*
Jūra, ae, m., *the Jura*, chain of mts. on the west of Switzerland.
jūrō, 1, *swear, take oath.*
jūs, jūrīs, n., *right, power; law, code.*
jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, n., *oath.*
jūstitia, ae, f., *justice.*
jūstus, a, um, *just.*
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus, *assist, help, aid.*
jūxtā, adv., *near by.*

Kalendae, ārum, f. pl., *Kalends* (first of the month).

L., abbreviation of Lūcius, *Lucius*, a man's name.
Labiēnus, ī, m., *Labienus*, a famous lieutenant of Caesar.
labor, ōris, m., *labor, exertion.*
labōrō, 1, *toil; suffer;* in battle, *be hard pressed.*
lacessō, ere, cessīvī (iī), ītus, *harass.*
lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*
laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful.*
lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
lassitūdō, inis, f., *weariness.*

lateō, ēre, uī, *lurk.*
lātitūdō, inis, f., *breadth;* in lātitūdinem, *sidewise.*
Latobrīgī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Latobrigi,* an ancient tribe.
lātus, a, um, *broad, wide.*
latus, eris, n., *side, flank.*
laudō, 1, *praise.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise.*
laxō, 1, *loosen, open up.*
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lēgātus, ī, m., *lieutenant; envoy.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion.*
legiōnārius, a, um, *legionary, belonging to the legion.*
Lemannus, ī, m. (*Lake*) *Lemannus;* the modern Lake Geneva.
lēniter, *gently.*
Lentulus, ī, m., *Lentulus,* a man's name.
levis, e, *light.*
levitās, ātis, f., *lightness, instability.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*
līber, lībera, līberum, *free.*
līberāliter, *generously.*
līberī, ōrum (um), m. pl., *children* (free born).
līberō, 1, *free; acquit.*
lībertās, tātis, f., *liberty.*
licet, impers., *it is permitted* (§ 287).
Lingonēs, um, pl., *the Lingones,* a Gallic tribe.
lingua, ae, f., *tongue; language.*
linter, tris, f., *skiff.*
littera, ae, f., *a letter* (of the alphabet); pl. litterae, ārum, *letter, epistle.*
lītus, oris, n., *shore.*
locus, ī, m.; pl., loca, ōrum, n., *place; family.*
longē, adv., *far.*
longus, a, um, *long.*
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak.*
Lūcius, ī (iī), m., *Lucius,* a man's name.
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light;* prīmā lūce, *at daybreak.*
lūxuria, ae, f., *luxury, self-indulgence.*

M., abbreviation for Mārcus, ī, m., *Marcus,* a man's name.
māchinātiō, ōnis, f., *contrivance, engine.*
magis, *more, rather,* comp. of magnopere.
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate, ruler.*
magnitūdō, inis, f., *size, greatness.*
magnopere, *greatly, earnestly* (§ 109).
magnus, a, um, *large, great.*
major, *larger, greater,* comp. of magnus; major nātū, *elder* (lit. *greater as to birth*); majōrēs, um, m. (sc. nātū), *elders; ancestors.*
male, adv., *badly, ill* (§ 109).
maleficium, ī, n., *wrong-doing.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer* (§ 269).
malus, a, um, *bad.*
mandātum, ī, n., *command, order.*
mandō, 1, *assign, commit, consign, betake.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
manipulus, ī, m. (*military company*), *maniple.*
mānsuētūdō, inis, f., *gentleness, leniency.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand;* in military sense, *band, force.*
Mārcellus, ī, m., *Marcellus,* a man's name.
mare, is, n., *sea.*
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime.*

Massilia, ae, f., *Marseilles*.
māter, tris, f., *mother*.
mātūrō, 1, *hasten*.
maximē, *especially*, sup. of magnopere (§ 109).
maximus, a, um, *greatest*, superl. of **magnus**.
medius, a, um, *middle*, *the middle of*.
melior, ius, *better;* comp. of bonus.
meminī, isse, *remember* (§ 281).
memoria, ae, f., *memory*, *recollection*.
Menapiī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Menapii*, a Belgian tribe.
mēns, mentis, f., *mind*.
mercātor, ōris, m., *trader*.
meritum, ī, n., *merit*, *desert*.
Messalla, ae, m., *Messalla*, a man's name.
meus, a, um, *my*.
mīles, itis, m., *soldier*.
mīlitāris, e, *military*.
mīlle, indecl., *thousand* (§ 114, 4); pl., **mīlia**, ium.
minimē, adv., *least* (§ 109).
minimus, a, um, superl. of **parvus**.
minor, *less*, comp. of **parvus**; **minor nātū**, *younger*.
minus, adv., *less;* **sī minus**, *if not*.
miser, a, um, *wretched*, *unfortunate*.
misericordia, ae, f., *pity*, *mercy*.
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send*, *hurl*.
mōbilitās, ātis, f., *fickleness*.
modo, *only; just*, *just now;* as conj., *provided that*.
modus, ī, m., *manner*, *kind*.
moenia, ium, n. pl., *walls* (of a city).
molestē, *with trouble*, *with vexation*.
molliō, īre, īvī, ītus, *soften*.
moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, *advise*, *warn*.
mōns, montis, m., *mountain*, *hill*.
mora, ae, f., *delay*.
Morinī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Morini*, a Belgian tribe.
moror, ārī, morātus sum, *delay; tarry*, *linger*.
mors, mortis, f., *death*.
mōs, mōris, m., *custom;* pl., **mōrēs**, *character*.
Mosa, ae, m., the river *Meuse*.
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt*.
moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move; touch*.
mulier, mulieris, f., *woman*.
multitūdō, inis, f, *multitude; number*.
multō, *by much*, abl. of **multum**.
multus, a, um, *much;* pl., *many*.
mūnīmentum, ī, n., *fortification*, *defence*.
mūniō, īre, īvī (iī), ītus, *fortify*, *protect*.
mūnītiō, ōnis, f., *fortification*.
mūnus, eris, n., *reward*.
mūrus, ī, m., *wall*.

nam, *for*.
Nammeius, ī, m., an Helvetian.
nancīscor, ī, nactus sum, *procure*, *find*.
nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born*, *rise*.
nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation*, *tribe*.
nātūra, ae, f., *nature*, *character*.
(**nātus**, ūs), m., only in the abl. sing., **nātū**, *as to birth* (in phrases expressing age).
nauta, ae, m., *sailor*.
nāvālis, e, *naval*.
nāvicula, ae, f., *small boat*.
nāvis, is, f., *ship*, *boat*.
nāvō, 1, *do with energy;* **operam nāvāre**, *act vigorously*, or *manfully*.
nē, *not; lest; that . . . not; from* (after verbs of *hindering*); **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, emphatic

negative, emphasizing the expression placed between **nē** and **quidem**.

-ne, enclitic interrog. particle, asking for information.

nec (neque), *nor; and not.*

necessārius, a, um, *necessary, urgent.*

necesse est, impers., *it is necessary.*

necessitās, ātis, f., *need, necessity.*

neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *neglect.*

negōtium, ī (iī), n., *business; trouble, difficulty.*

nēmō, m., defective noun, *no one;* acc. **nēminem**, dat. **nēminī**; other cases lacking.

neque (nec), *nor, and not.*

nēquīquam, *in vain, without reason.*

Nerviī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Nervii,* a Belgian tribe.

neu, *and not.*

neuter, tra, trum, *neither* (§ 83).

nihil, indecl., *nothing;* as adv., *not, no.*

nihilō, abl., *by nothing;* **nihilō minus**, *none the less.*

nisi, *unless, except.*

nōbilis, e, *noble.*

nōbilitās, tātis, f., *nobility; rank.*

noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *injure, harm.*

noctū, *by night.*

nocturnus, a, um, *at night.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling* (§ 269).

nōmen, inis, n., *name.*

nōminātim, adv., *by name; item by item.*

nōminō, 1, *name, mention.*

nōn, *not;* **nōn sōlum (nōn modo) . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

nōndum, *not yet.*

nōnne, interrog. particle expecting answer "yes."

nōnnūllus, a, um, *some.*

nōnus, a, um, *ninth.*

noster, tra, trum, *our;* **nostrī**, *our men, our soldiers.*

novem, indecl. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, ī, n., *Noviodunum,* a Gallic town.

novus, a, um, *new;* **novissimus, a, um**, *last, rear;* **novissimum agmen**, *the rear.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūdō, 1, *strip, deprive; expose.*

nūllus, a, um, *no* (§ 83).

num, interrog. particle expecting answer "no"; in indirect questions, *whether.*

numerus, ī, m., *number, quantity.*

Numidae, ārum, m. pl., *Numidians;* as adj., *Numidian.*

numquam, *never.*

nunc, *now.*

nūntiō, 1, *announce, report.*

nūntius, ī (iī), m., *messenger; message.*

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

obdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *extend, run, construct.*

oberrō, 1, *wander about.*

obiciō, ere, objēcī, objectus, *throw in the face of; throw up.*

obitus, ūs, m., *death, destruction.*

oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum, *forget.*

obses, idis, m., *hostage.*

obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *blockade.*

obsidiō, ōnis, f., *siege; oppression.*

obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, *occupy, hold, obtain, secure; prevail.*

obveniō, īre, venī, ventum, *meet, encounter.*

occāsiō, ōnis, f., *occasion, opportunity.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *setting;* **occāsus sōlis**, *sunset.*

occīdō, ere, **occīdī**, **occīsus**, *kill.*

occultus, a, um, *hidden;* **in occultō**, *in hiding.*

occupō, 1, *take possession of, seize; occupy.*

occurrō, ere, **currī**, **cursum**, *run to meet; meet.*

Ōceanus, ī, m., *the ocean.*

octāvus, a, um, *eighth;* **octāvus decimus**, *eighteenth.*

Octodūrus, ī, m., *Octodurus*, a village of the Veragri.

octō, indecl., *eight.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, **ōdisse**, *hate* (§ 281).

offerō, **ferre**, **obtulī**, **oblātus**, *offer; suggest;* **sē offerre**, *volunteer.*

officium, ī (iī), n., *duty.*

omittō, ere, **mīsī**, **missus**, *omit, overlook, neglect.*

omnīnō, adv., *in all, altogether;* with negatives, *at all.*

omnis, e, *all, every.*

onerārius, a, um, *burden-bearing;* **nāvēs onerāriae**, *transports.*

onus, eris, n., *weight.*

opera, ae, f., *assistance, effort.*

opīniō, ōnis, f., *opinion, expectation; reputation.*

oportet, ēre, **oportuit**, *it behooves, ought* (§ 287).

oppidānus, a, um, *of the town;* as noun, **oppidānī**, *townspeople.*

oppidum, ī, n., *town, walled town.*

opportūnus, a, um, *fit, opportune, suitable.*

opprimō, ere, **pressī**, **pressus**, *overwhelm.*

oppugnātiō, ōnis, f., *assault, method of assault.*

oppugnō, 1, *attack, assault.*

ops, **opis**, f. (nom. sing. is not used), *power, help;* in pl., *resources, assistance.*

optimē, sup. of **bene** (§ 109).

optimus, a, um, sup. of **bonus** (§ 101).

optō, 1, *desire.*

opus, indecl., n., *need;* **opus est**, *it is necessary; there is need.*

opus, eris, n., *work; fortification.*

ōra, ae, f., *coast.*

ōrātiō, ōnis, f., *speech, words.*

ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator; envoy.*

ōrdō, inis, m., *rank; order, arrangement.*

orior, **orīrī**, **ortus sum**, *arise, spring, be descended.*

ortus, perf. participle of **orior**.

Osismī, ōrum, m. pl., *Osismi*, a Gallic tribe.

ostendō, ere, **tendī**, **tentus**, *show, explain.*

P., abbreviation of **Pūblius**.

pābulum, ī, n., *forage, food* (of animals).

pācō, 1, *subdue, reduce to peace.*

Paemānī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Paemani*, a Belgian tribe.

paene, *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, ēre, **paenituit**, impers., *it causes regret* (§ 287).

palūs, lūdis, f., *marsh.*

pandō, ere, **pandī**, **passus**, *unfold, open, stretch out.*

pār, gen. **paris**, *equal.*

parātus, a, um, *ready, prepared.*

parcō, ere, **pepercī**, **parsūrus**, *spare*, (§ 306, 2).

parō, 1, *prepare, get ready.*

pars, **partis**, f., *part, division; side; direction, quarter.*

partim, *partly.*

parvulus, a, um, *slight, insignificant, trifling.*

parvus, a, um, *small.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace* (five feet).
patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, *open.*
pateō, ēre, uī, *lie open*, *extend.*
pater, patris, m., *father*, *ancestor.*
patior, ī, passus sum, *suffer; allow.*
patria, ae, f., *country*, *fatherland.*
patrius, a, um, *ancestral.*
paucī, ae, a, *few*, used only in pl.
paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness*, *small number.*
paulātim, *little by little*, *gradually.*
paulisper, *for a little while.*
paulō, abl., *by a little.*
paululum, *a very little*, *slightly.*
paulum, *a little*, *for a little.*
pāx, ācis, f., *peace.*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier;* in pl., *infantry.*
pedester, tris, tre, *infantry* (as adj.).
Pedius, ī, m., *Pedius*, a Roman lieutenant.
peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*
pellis, is, f., *skin*, *hide.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive; drive out*, *banish; rout*, *defeat.*
per, prep. w. acc., *through*, *over*, *among; by means of*, *through the instrumentality of; on account of; during.*
perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *lose.*
perdūcō, ere. dūxī, ductus, *conduct; extend*, *construct.*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *carry through*, *convey*, *endure* (§ 264).
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish.*
perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break through*, *destroy.*
perfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*
perīclitor, 1, *make trial.*
perīculōsus, a, um, *dangerous.*
perīculum, ī, n., *danger.*
permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *permit*, *grant*, *intrust*, *deliver*, *cede* (§ 306. 2).
permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move deeply; astonish*, *alarm.*
perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual.*
persequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow up.*
perspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, *see*, *see through; learn*, *understand.*
persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *persuade.*
perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify.*
pertineō, ēre, uī, *pertain*, *tend to; extend*, *reach.*
perturbō, 1, *agitate*, *throw into confusion*, *disturb.*
perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come*, *arrive.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
peto, ere, īvī (iī), ītus, *seek*, *request; attack.*
phalanx, angis, f., *phalanx*, *solid mass of troops.*
pīlum, ī, n., *javelin*, *spear.*
Pīsō, ōnis, m., *Piso*, a man's name.
placeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *please.*
plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain.*
plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people.*
plēnus, a, um, *full.*
plērīque, aeque, aque, *most.*
plērumque, *for the most part*, *generally.*
plūrēs, a, *more; several;* plural of plūs (§ 91).
plūrimus, a, um, sup. of multus (§ 101).
plūs, comp. of multus (§§ 91, 101).
poena, ae, f., *penalty*, *punishment.*
polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise.*
pollicitātiō, ōnis, f., *promise.*
Pompejus, Pompeī, m., *Pompey*, a man's name.
pondus, eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, set up, establish;* castra pōnere, *pitch a camp.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
populor, 1, *lay waste, devastate.*
populus, ī, m., *people.*
porrēctus, a, um, *extended.*
porta, ae, f., *gate.*
portō, 1, *carry, bring.*
portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*
poscō, ere, poposcī, *demand.*
possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession.*
possideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *possess.*
possum, posse, potuī, *be able, be powerful, can* (§ 253).
post, adv., *afterwards.*
post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*
posteā, *afterwards.*
posterus, a, um, *following* (§ 102, 2); posterī, ōrum, m., *descendants.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
postrēmō, adv., *finally.*
postrīdiē, adv., *on the next day.*
postulātum, ī, n., *demand.*
postulō, 1, *demand.*
potēns, entis, pres. participle of possum, used as adj., *powerful.*
potestās, ātis, f., *power, opportunity, possibility.*
potior, īrī, ītus sum, *gain possession of.*
potius, *rather.*
prae, prep. w. abl., *in comparison with.*
praeacūtus, a, um, *sharpened at the point.*
praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, *furnish, afford.*
praeceps, ipitis, *headlong.*
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *enjoin.*
praeda, ae, f., *booty.*
praedō, ōnis, m., *robber.*
praedor, 1, *plunder.*
praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *choose, prefer* (§ 264); *put before;* sē praeferre, *outdo.*
praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *put in charge, place in command.* (§ 306, 3).
praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send ahead, send in advance.*
praemium, ī (iī), n., *reward.*
praescrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *prescribe, direct.*
praesēns, praesentis, *present,* pres. participle of praesum, used as adj.
praesertim, *especially.*
praesidium, ī (iī), *garrison, guard; safety, security, protection.*
praestō, āre, itī, itus, *surpass, excel; perform, show, exhibit;* praestat, *it is better.*
praesum, esse, fuī, *be in charge of* (§ 252; 306, 3).
praeter, prep. w. acc., *except, besides.*
praetereā, *besides.*
praetor, ōris, m., *praetor.*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus, *press, crowd;* pass., *be hard pressed.*
prīmipīlus, ī, m., *primipilus* (first centurion of the first cohort).
prīmō, *first, at first, firstly.*
prīmum, *first, for the first time.*
prīmus, a, um, *first, foremost, leading;* superl. of comp. prior (§ 102, 1).
prīnceps, ipis, m., *chief; leader, instigator;* as adj., *first.*
prior, us, *former, before (another)*; priōrēs, *those in advance* (102, 1).
prīstinus, a, um, *pristine, former.*
priusquam, *before.*
prīvātus, a, um, *private;* as noun, prīvātus, ī, m., *a private citizen.*
prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front*

of; for, instead of; in behalf of; in accordance with.

probō, 1, *approve.*

prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *advance; go ahead.*

procul, *far, far off, at a distance.*

prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, *lie down.*

prōcūrō, 1, *care for, have charge of.*

prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run forward.*

proelior, 1, *fight.*

proelium, ī (iī), n., *battle.*

profectiō, ōnis, f., *departure.*

proficīscor, ī, profectus sum, *set out.*

prōflīgō, 1, *put to rout.*

profugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape; flee for refuge.*

prōgnātus, a, um, *descended.*

prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, *advance, go forward.*

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *keep away, keep off; keep from, prevent.*

prōiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus, *throw forward; cast; throw away, abandon.*

prōmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move forward.*

prope, *nearly, almost.*

properō, 1, *hasten.*

propinquitās, ātis, f., *nearness; kinship, blood relationship.*

propinquus, a, um, *near.*

prōpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place in front; set up.*

propter, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*

propterea, *on that account, therefore;* propterea quod, *because.*

prōpugnō, 1, *defend oneself.*

prōsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow; address.*

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view.*

prōtinus, *forthwith, straightway.*

prōturbō, 1, *throw into confusion.*

prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *provide, take care; foresee.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*

prōvolō, 1, *fly forward.*

proximē, superl. of prope (§ 109), *recently.*

proximus, a, um, *nearest, next* (§ 102, 1).

prūdentia, ae, f., *foresight, prudence; wisdom.*

pūblicus, a, um, *public.*

Pūblius, ī (iī), m., *Publius*, a man's name.

puer, ī, m., *boy.*

pugna, ae, f., *battle.*

pugnō, 1, *fight.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful.*

pulsus, perf. pass. participle of pellō.

putō, 1, *think.*

quā, adv., *where.*

quadringentī, ae, a, *four hundred.*

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *seek; inquire.*

quālis, e, rel., *as; such as;* interrog., *of what sort?*

1. quam, *how?*

2. quam, *than.*

quamquam, *although.*

quamvīs, *though, although.*

quandō, interrog., *when.*

quantum, *how much; as much as.*

quantus, a, um, *how great; as great as.*

quārē, rel. and interrog., *wherefore.*

quārtus, a, um, *fourth.*

quasi, *as if.*

quattuor, indecl., *four.*

-que, enclitic conj., *and.*

queror, ī, questus sum, *complain.*

quī, quae, quod, *who, which.*

quia, conj., *because.*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, *a certain* (§ 146).

quidem, *indeed, even; of course;* nē . . . quidem, *not even.*
quīn, *that not; by which not, but that, that, from.*
quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, *what, pray!*
quīndecim, indecl., *fifteen.*
quīngentī, ae, a, *five hundred.*
quīnquāgintā, indecl., *fifty.*
quīnque, indecl., *five.*
quīntus, a, um, *fifth.*
Quīntus, ī, m., *Quintus*, a man's name.
quis, quid, interr. pron. *who, what?*
quis, qua (quae), quid, indef. pron., *any* (§ 146).
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), *any, any one* (§ 146).
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quicque), *each* (§ 146).
quisquis, quicquid, *whatever.*
quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs, *any you wish, any whatever.*
1. quō, rel. and interr. adv., *whither, to which.*
2. quō, conj., *in order that.*
quod, *because, on the ground that.*
quōminus, *from* (after verbs of *hindering*).
quondam, *formerly, once upon a time.*
quoniam, conj., *inasmuch as.*
quoque, *also*, always placed after the word it modifies.

rāmus, ī, m., *branch.*
ratiō, ōnis, f., *reckoning, account; theory; reason; consideration; plan.*
ratis, is, f., *raft.*
Rauracī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Rauraci*, an ancient tribe.
recēns, gen. recentis, *recent.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *take back, receive;* with reflexive sē, *recover, retreat.*
recūsō, 1, *refuse.*
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, *return, give back; render, make.*
redeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *return, go back* (§ 280).
redigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *reduce; render.*
redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *ransom.*
redintegrō, 1, *renew.*
Redonēs, um, m. pl., *the Redones*, a Gallic tribe.
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead back.*
referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back, return, bring; report* (§ 264).
reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *rebuild.*
refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break down.*
regiō, ōnis, f., *region.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *regal power, kingdom.*
reiciō, ere, rejēcī, jectus, *hurl back, drive back, repulse.*
relanguēscō, ere, *become enfeebled.*
relātus, perf. pass. participle of referō.
relīctus, perf. pass. participle of relinquō.
relinquō, ere, līquī, līctus, *leave, leave behind.*
reliquus, qua, quum, *remaining, left; rest of.*
remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
rēmex, igis, m., *rower.*
Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Remi*, a Gallic tribe.
reminīscor, ī, *remember.*
remittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *relax; send back, hurl back.*
removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *remove.*
Rēmus, ī, m., *one of the Remi.*
renovō, 1, *renew.*

renūntiō, 1, *bring back word*, *report.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back*, *repel*, *repulse.*
repente, *suddenly.*
repentīnus, a, um, *sudden.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus, *discover*, *find*, *secure.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing*, *affair*, *circumstance;* pl., *fortunes.*
rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissus, *tear down.*
resistō, ere, restitī, *resist* (§ 306, 2).
respiciō, ere, exī, ectus, *look back.*
respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus, *answer*, *reply.*
respōnsum, ī, n., *answer*, *reply.*
rēs pūblica, gen. reī pūblicae, f., *state*, *republic.*
respuō, ere, uī, *reject.*
restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, *restore.*
retineō, ere, uī, tentus, *retain.*
revertor, ī, *return;* perf., revertī.
revocō, 1, *recall.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
Rhēnus, ī, m., *Rhine.*
Rhodanus, ī, m., *Rhone.*
rīpa, ae, f., *bank.*
rogō, 1, *ask.*
Rōma, ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman;* as noun, *a Roman.*
rūbus, ī, m., *bramble*, *bramble-bush.*
rūmor, ōris, m., *rumor*, *report.*
rūpēs, is, f., *cliff.*
rūrsus, *again.*

Sabīnus, ī, m., *Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Sabis, is, m., a Belgian river, the modern Sambre.
saepe, *often.*
saepēs, is, f., *hedge.*
sagittārius, ī., m., *archer*, *bowman.*
salūs, lūtis, f., *safety*, *welfare.*
sarcina, ae, f., *pack*, *bundle*, *load*, *baggage.*
satis, adv. and noun, *sufficiently; enough.*
satisfaciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *satisfy*, *make amends.*
saxum, ī, n., *rock.*
scientia, ae, f., *knowledge.*
sciō, īre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write;* of laws, *draw up.*
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
sē, reflexive, *he; himself*, *herself* (§ 123).
sectiō, ōnis, f., *booty.*
secundus, a, um, *second; favorable.*
secundum, prep. w. acc., *along.*
sed, *but.*
sēdecim, indecl., *sixteen.*
sēdēs, is, f., *seat*, *abode*, *dwelling-place.*
semper, *always.*
senātor, tōris, m., *senator.*
senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*
senex, senis, m., *old man;* as adj., *old.*
Senonēs, um, m., *the Senones*, a Gallic tribe.
sententia, ae, f., *opinion*, *sentiment*, *decision.*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel*, *perceive.*
sentis, is, f., *briar*, *briar-bush.*
sēparātim, *separately.*
septem, indecl., *seven.*
septimus, a, um, *seventh.*
septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*
sepultūra, ae, f., *burial.*
Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *Sequani*, a Gallic tribe.
sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow; seek.*
sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation.*
servitūs, ūtis, f., *servitude*, *bondage.*

servō, 1, *save; preserve*, *maintain*.
servus, ī, m., *slave*.
sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred*.
sex, indecl., *six*.
sexāgintā, indecl., *sixty*.
sexcentī, ae, a, *six hundred*.
Sextius, ī, m., *Sextius*, a man's name.
sextus, a, um, *sixth;* sextus decimus, *sixteenth*.
sī, *if;* sī minus, *if not*.
sīc, *so* (of manner).
signifer, ī, m., *standard-bearer*.
significātiō, ōnis, f., *sign*, *signal*.
significō, 1, *show; mean*.
signum, ī, n., *signal; standard*.
silentium, ī (iī), n., *silence*.
silva, ae, f., *forest*.
silvestris, e, *wooded*.
simul, *together*, *at the same time*.
simul ac (atque), *as soon as*.
sīn, conj., *but if*.
sine, prep. w. abl., *without*.
singulāris, e, *single*, *singular*, *special*, *exceptional*.
singulī, ae, a, *one at a time*, *each*, *separate*.
sinister, tra, trum, *left*, *left hand*.
socius, ī (iī), m., *ally*, *comrade*.
sōl, is, m., *sun*.
sollicitō, 1, *excite*, *arouse; tamper with*.
sōlum, *only;* nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.
sōlus, a, um, *alone*, *only* (§ 83).
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, *loose;* of ships, *unmoor;* nāvēs solvere, *set sail*.
sonus, ī, m., *sound*.
spatium, i (iī), n., *space*, *distance; time*.
speciēs, ēī, f., *sight*.
speculātor, ōris, m., *spy*.
spērō, 1, *hope*, *hope for;* governs the acc.
spēs, speī, f., *hope*.
spīritus, ūs, m., *breath; arrogance*.
sponte (abl. of obsolete spōns), *of one's own accord; voluntarily*.
statim, *at once*, *immediately*.
statiō, ōnis, f., *station*, *post; picket*.
statua, ae, f., *statue*.
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *decide*.
statūra, ae, f., *stature*.
strepitus, ūs, m., *noise*, *uproar*.
studeō, ēre, uī, *be eager*, *pay attention to*.
studium, ī, n., *zeal*, *eagerness*, *enthusiasm*.
stultitia, ae, f., *folly*.
sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under; towards*.
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *withdraw*, *lead away; snatch away*.
subeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *approach* (§ 280).
subitō, *suddenly*.
sublevō, 1, *relieve*.
submittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send*, *despatch*.
subruō, ere, uī, utus, *undermine*.
subsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow*, *follow after*.
subsidium, ī (iī), n., *assistance;* pl. *reinforcements*.
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *approach*, *draw near; follow; succeed*.
succendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus, *set fire to*.
Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., *the Suessiones*, a Belgian tribe.
suī, *self*, *oneself* (§ 123).
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be*.
summa, ae, f., *sum*, *total*, *supreme control*, *management*.
summus, *highest*, *greatest*, *top of*, *top* (§ 373); sup. of superus (§ 102, 2).

sūmō, ere, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**, *take, assume.*
superior, **us**, *higher, upper, above; former;* comp. of **superus** (§ 102, 2).
superō, 1, *overcome, defeat, surpass; be superior.*
supersedeō, **ēre**, **sēdī**, **sessum**, *refrain from.*
supersum, **esse**, **fuī**, *remain, be over, survive.*
supplex, **icis**, m., *suppliant;* also used adjectively.
supplicātiō, **ōnis**, f., *thanksgiving,*
supplicium, **ī** (**iī**), n., *torture, punishment.*
suprā, prep. w. acc. and adv., *above.* As adv., *previously.*
suprēmus, **a**, **um**, superl. of **superus** (§ 102, 2).
suspīciō, **ōnis**, f., *suspicion.*
sustentō, 1, *hold out, sustain, endure.*
sustineō, **ēre**, **uī**, *withstand; hold out.*
sustulī, perf. ind. act. of **tollō**.
suus, **a**, **um**, *his; her; its; their.*

T., abbreviation of **Titus**.
tabula, **ae**, f., *tablet;* pl. *lists.*
talentum, **ī**, n., *a talent* (about $1200).
tālis, **e**, *such.*
tam, *so* (of degree).
tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*
tantulus, **a**, **um**, *so slight.*
tantum (n. of **tantus**), *so much.*
tantus, **a**, **um**, *so great.*
tardō, 1, *retard, check.*
tardus, **a**, **um**, *slow, listless.*
tegimentum, **ī**, n., *covering.*
tēlum, **ī**, n., *javelin.*
temere, *rashly.*
templum, **ī**, n., *temple.*
temptō, 1, *attempt, try, make trial of.*
tempus, **oris**, n., *time.*
tendō, **ere**, **tetendī**, **tentus**, *stretch; stretch out; stretch one's course; go.*
teneō, **ēre**, **uī**, *hold.*
tener, **a**, **um**, *tender, young.*
tergum, **ī**, n., *back;* **ā tergō**, *from behind.*
terra, **ae**, f., *land, a land, country.*
terror, **ōris**, m., *terror, fear.*
tertius, **a**, **um**, *third.*
testūdō, **inis**, f., *tortoise;* a military formation.
Teutonī, **ōrum**, m. pl, *the Teutons,* a Germanic tribe.
Themistoclēs, **is**, m., *Themistocles,* an Athenian statesman.
timeō, **ēre**, **uī**, *fear.*
timor, **ōris**, m., *fear.*
Titūrius, **ī**, m., *Titurius,* a man's name.
Titus, **ī**, m., *Titus,* a man's name.
tollō, **ere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, *raise, pick up; take, take away.*
tormentum, **ī**, n., *engine,* for hurling missiles.
tot, indecl., *so many.*
totidem, indecl., *the same number, just as many.*
tōtus, **a**, **um**, *whole, entire* (§ 83).
trabs, **is**, f., *beam.*
trādō, **ere**, **trādidī**, **trāditus**, *hand over.*
trādūcō, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *lead across; lead through.*
trānō, 1, *swim across.*
trāns, prep. with acc., *across.*
trānseō, **īre**, **iī**, **itus**, *cross; cross over.*
trānsgredior, **ī**, **gressus sum**, *cross.*
trānsigō, **ere**, **ēgī**, **āctus**, *pass, spend.*

trānsportō, 1, *transport*, *set across.*
trānsversus, a, um, *crosswise*, *cross.*
trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*
trēs, tria, *three* (§ 114, 2).
Trēverī, ōrum, m. pl., *Treveri*, a tribe of Belgians.
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune*, officer in a Roman legion; also a *tribune* of the plebs.
trīduum, ī, n., *three days.*
triplex, icis, *triple.*
tū, tuī, *thou*, *you* (§ 122).
tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*
tueor, ērī, *guard*, *watch.*
Tulingī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Tulingi*, an ancient tribe.
tum, *then*, *at that time.*
tumulus, ī, m., *mound.*
tumultus, ūs, m., *tumult; uprising.*
tunc, *then.*
Turonī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Turoni*, a Gallic tribe.
turpis, e, *base.*
turpitūdō, inis, f., *shame*, *disgrace.*
turris, is, f., *tower.*
tūtus, a, um, *safe*, *secure.*
tuus, a, um, *thy*, *your* (§ 124).

ubi, rel. and interr. adv., *where; when.*
Ubiī, ōrum, m., *Ubii*, a German tribe.
ulcīscor, ī, ultus sum, *avenge.*
ūllus, a, um, *any* (§ 83).
ulterior, us, *farther*, *more distant* (§ 102).
ūnā, *together.*
unde, *whence.*
ūndecimus, a, um, *eleventh.*
ūndēvīgintī, indecl., *nineteen.*
undique, *from all parts* or *sides.*
ūniversus, a, um, *all*, *complete.*
ūnus, a, um, *one*, *alone* (§ 83).
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
urgeō, ere, ursī, *press*, *hard press.*
Usipetēs, um, m., *Usipetes*, a German tribe.
ūsque, *even.*
ūsus, ūs, m., *experience; use*, *service*, *advantage.*
ut, *as; that*, *in order that;* with verbs of fearing, *that not.*
uter, utra, utrum, int. adj., *which* (of two)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen. **utrīusque** (cf. § 83), *each* (of two); in pl. *both* (of two parties).
utī, see ut.
utinam, affirmative particle (§ 393).
ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use* (§ 344, 1).
utrum, *whether.*

vacuus, a, um, *vacant*, *empty.*
vadum, ī, n., *ford*, *shallow water.*
valeō, ēre, uī, valitūrus, *be strong; avail*, *prevail.*
vallis, vallis, f., *valley.*
vāllum, ī, n., *wall*, *breastworks; intrenchment.*
varius, a, um, *various.*
vāstō, 1, *lay waste.*
Veliocassēs, um, m. pl., *the Veliocasses*, a Belgian tribe.
vēndō, ere, didī, ditus, *sell.*
Venellī, ōrum, m. pl., *Venelli*, a Gallic tribe.
Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., *Veneti*, a Gallic tribe.
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*
verbum, ī, n., *word.*
vereor, ērī, itus sum, *fear.*
vergō, ere, *extend.*
vērō, *indeed*, *but.*
versor, ārī, ātus sum, *move about; be engaged in; be involved in; stay*, *remain.*

vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn;* terga vertere, *flee.*
Verucloetius, ī, *Verucloetius*, an Helvetian envoy.
vesper, ī, m., *evening.*
vester, vestra, vestrum, *your.*
veterānus, a, um, *veteran.*
vetō, āre, uī, itus, *forbid.*
vetus, gen. veteris, *old, long-standing.*
vēxillum, ī, n., *banner, flag.*
vexō, 1, *harass, annoy; ravage.*
via, ae, f., *way, road.*
victor, ōris, m., *victor*, as adj., *victorious.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see;* in pass., *be seen; seem, appear; seem best.*
vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (of the night).
vīgintī, indecl., *twenty.*
vīmen, inis, n., *osier, willow shoot.*
vincō, ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer.*
vīnea, ae, f., *vineyard, trellis; shed*, used to protect soldiers in siege operations.
vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*
vir, ī, m., *man.*
vīrēs, pl. of vīs.
Viromanduī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Viromandui*, a Belgian tribe.
virtūs, tūtis, f., *valor, virtue.*
vīs, vis, f. (acc. vim), *violence; number;* vim facere, *do violence, violate;* pl. vīrēs, ium, *strength.*
vīsus, perf. pass. participle of videō.
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
vītō, 1, *avoid.*
vix, *scarcely, with difficulty.*
vocō, 1, *call, summon; name.*
volō, velle, voluī, *wish, be willing*, (§ 269).
voluntās, ātis, f., *wish, desire, willingness, consent.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word, exclamation.*
vulgō, *generally.*
vulnerō, *wound.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound.*

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY.

abandon, dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus.
(**able**), **be able**, possum, posse, potuī.
absent, **be absent**, absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
(**account**), **on account of**, propter, *prep. w. acc.*
accuse, accūsō, 1.
across, trāns, *prep. w. acc.*
adjudge, jūdicō, 1.
advance, prōgredior, ī, gressus sum.
advice, cōnsilium, ī (iī), *n.*
after (*adv.*), post.
after (*conj.*), postquam.
after, post, *prep. w. acc.*
afterwards, posteā.
against, contra, *prep. w. acc.*
all, omnis, e.
almost, paene.
already, jam.
although, **though**, quamquam; quamvīs; cum.
always, semper.
ancestors, majōrēs, um, *m.*
and, et; -que (*enclitic*); atque.
announce, nūntiō, 1.
another, alius, a, ud.
answer, respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum.
any, ūllus, a, um (§ 83).
anybody, **anyone**, **anything**, quisquam, quaequam, quidquam; quis, quid.
any you please, quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet *or* quodlibet (§ 146).
appoint, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus; *lit.*, say.
approach, *noun*, aditus, ūs, *m.*
approach, *verb*, appropinquō, 1; adeō, īre, iī, itus.
approve, probō, 1.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, *m.*
arm, armō, 1.
army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*
army on the march, agmen, minis, *n.*
as long as, dum.
as soon as, simul atque (ac).
ask, rogō, 1.
assemble (*intrans.*), conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
assistance, subsidium, ī (iī), *n.*; auxilium, ī (iī), *n.*
(**at hand**), **be at hand**, adsum, esse, adfuī, adfutūrus.
at once, statim.
Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f.*
attack, adorior, īrī, ortus sum.
attack, **assault** (*a town*), oppugnō, 1.
avoid, vītō, 1.

bad, malus, a, um.
barbarian (*adj.*), barbarus, a, um; (*noun*), barbarus, ī, *m.*
battle, proelium, ī (iī), *n.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
be able, possum, posse, potuī, (§ 253).
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

beast of burden, jūmentum, ī, *n.*
because, quod; quia; cum (§ 407, 2).
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
before (*prep. and adv.*), ante.
before (*conj.*), antequam, priusquam.
begin, coepī, coepisse (§ 281.)
behoove, it behooves, oportet, ēre, oportuit (§ 287).
Belgians, Belgae, ārum, *m.*
believe, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus.
betake oneself, cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, *with the reflexive pron.*
better, melius.
between, inter, *prep. w. acc.*
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātus.
boat, nāvis, is, *f.*
booty, praeda, ae, *f.*
born, be born, nāscor, ī, nātus sum.
born, nātus, a, um.
both, each, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
boundary, fīnis, is, *m.*
boy, puer, erī, *m.*
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter; *from the adj.*, fortis, e.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
brief, brevis, e.
bring, afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus.
bring about, efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
bring against, īnferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, *with dat. of indirect obj.* (§ 306, 3).
bring back, referō, ferre, rettulī, relātus.
Britain, Britannia, ae, *f.*
brother, frāter, tris, *m.*
by (*of personal agent*), ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*

Caesar, Caesar, is, *m.*
call (*name*), appellō, 1.
call (*summon*), vocō, 1.
call together, convocō, 1.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n.*
can (*be able*), possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captīvus, ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
cause, causa, ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitēs, um, *m. pl.* of eques, itis; **of cavalry, equestrian**, equester, tris, tre.
cease, dēsistō, ere, dēstitī.
certain, certain one, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *or* quoddam (146).
charge, be in charge, praesum, esse, fuī, *construed with dat.* (§ 306, 2).
charge, put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *construed with dat.* (§ 306, 3).
children, līberī, ōrum (um), *m.*
choose, dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.
circumstance, rēs, eī, *f.*
citizen, fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
coast, ōra, ae, *f.*
cohort, cohors, rtis, *f.*
collect, colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.
come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.
command (*noun*), mandātum, ī, *n.*
command (*verb*), imperō, 1.
commander, imperātor, ōris, *m.*
common, commūnis, e.
compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
concern, it concerns, interest, esse, fuit.
concerning, dē, *prep. w. abl.*
confer, colloquor, ī, locūtus sum.
conference, colloquium, ī (iī), *n.*
consul, cōnsul, is, *m.*
consult (with), dēlīberō, 1.
contend, dīmicō, 1.
contented, contentus, a, um.
council, concilium, ī (iī), *n.*
country, native country, patria, ae, *f.*
courageously, audācter, *from adj.* audāx, ācis.

cowardly, ignāvus, a, um.
Crassus, Crassus, ī, *m.*
cross, trānseō, īre, iī, itūrus.

danger, perīculum, ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep.*
daughter, fīlia, ae, *f.*
day, diēs, ēī, *m.*
decide, cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
decree, dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus.
deep, altus, a, um.
defend, dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsus.
deliberate, dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
demand, flāgitō, 1.
depth, altitūdō, inis, *f.*
desire, **wish**, optō, 1.
difficult, difficilis, e.
dignity, dignitās, ātis, *f.*
discover, reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
dismiss, dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
distant, **be distant**, absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
doubt, **be in doubt**, dubitō, 1.
drive back, repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus.
drive out, expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus.
duty, officium, ī (iī), *n.*

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.
each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
each other, suī, sibi, sē; *also* nōs, vōs, *used reflexively.*
eager, alacer, alacris, alacre.
easily, facile, *from adj.* facilis, e.
easy, facilis, e.
else, alius, a, ud.
embankment, **rampart**, agger, eris, *m.*
encourage, incitō, 1.
endeavor, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, *dep.*
endure, perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
enemy (*in military sense*), hostis, is, *m.*; (*collectively*), hostēs, ium, *m.*
enemy (*personal*), inimīcus, ī, *m.*
enough, satis (§ 322).
entreat, implōrō, 1.
envoy, lēgātus, ī, *m.*
establish, cōnfīrmō, 1.
even, etiam.
not even, nē . . . quidem, *with the emphatic word or phrase between.*
ever, **always**, semper.
exhaust, **wear out**, cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
expect, exspectō, 1.

family (stock), genus, eris, *n.*
farmer, agricola, ae, *m.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
favor, beneficium, ī (iī), *n.*
fear (*noun*), timor, ōris, *m.*
fear (*verb*), timeō, ērē, uī.
fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, *m.*
fertile, ferāx, ācis.
few, paucī, ae, a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fiercely, ācriter; *from the adj.*, ācer, ācris, acre.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fight, pugnō, 1.
fill up, compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.
find (*by searching*), reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
find (*come upon*), inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.
first, *adj.*, prīmus, a, um.
first, *adv.*, prīmum.
fit out, **equip**, īnstruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus.
five, quīnque.
flee, **flee from**, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.

fleet, classis, is, *f.*
(following), on the following day, postrīdiē.
fond, fond of, cupidus, a, um.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
forage, pābulum, ī, *n.*
ford, vadum, ī, *n.*
forest, silva, ae, *f.*
forget, oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus sum.
fortify, mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus.
fortune, fortūna, ae, *f.*
fortune (*in sense of property*), fortūnae, ārum, *f.*
four, quattuor.
free (*adj.*), līber, a, um.
free, set free, līberō, 1.
friend, amīcus, ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, ae, *f.*
from, ā, ab.
from, out of, ē, ex.
from (= of), *with verbs of demanding, etc.*, ā, ab.
from, *after verbs of hindering, etc.*, quōminus, nē.
front (*adj.*), prīmus, a, um.

Galba, Galba, ae, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, ī (iī), *n.*
gate, porta, ae, *f.*
Gaul (*a Gaul*), Gallus, ī, *m.*
Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, ae, *f.*
Geneva, Genava, ae, *f.*
German (*a German*), Germānus, ī, *m.*
Germany, Germānia, ae, *f.*
get ready (*trans.*), parō, 1.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
go, eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum (§ 280).
go around, circumeō, īre, īvī (iī), itus (§ 280).
go away, abeō, īre, iī, itūrus.
good, bonus, a, um.
great, magnus, a, um (§ 101).
greatest (*of qualities*), summus, a, um.
greatly, magnopere.
(ground), on the ground that, quod.
guard, watch, tueor, ērī.

Haedui, Haeduī, ōrum, *m.*
happen, be done, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
happen, it happens, it befalls, *impersonal*, accidit, ere, accidit.
happy, beātus, a, um.
harass, vexō, āre, āvī, ātus.
harbor, portus, ūs, *m.*
harm, dētrīmentum, ī, *n.*
hate, ōdī, ōdisse (§ 281).
have, habeō, ēre, uī, itus.
he, is (ea, id) (§ 137).
hear, hear of, audiō, īre, īvī, ītus.
heart, courage, animus, ī, *m.*
help, auxilium, ī (iī), *n.*
Helvetii, Helvētiī, ōrum, *m.*
her, suus, a, um (§ 124, 1), *reflexive.*
here, hīc.
high, altus, a, um.
highest (*of qualities*), summus, a, um.
hill, collis, is, *m.*
himself, herself, *etc.*, suī, sibi, sē, *reflexive.*
hinder, impede, impediō, īre, īvī, ītus.
his, suus, a, um, *reflexive.*
(home), at home, domī (§ 366, 2).
home (to one's home), domum (§ 302, *b*).
honor, honor, ōris, *m.*
hope, spēs, eī, *f.*
horseman, eques, itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, idis, *m.*
house, domus, ūs, *f.*
how much, *followed by gen. of the whole* (§ 322), quantum.
how many, quot, *indecl.*

hundred, centum.
hurry, contendō, ere, tendī, tentum.

I, ego, meī.
if, sī, *conj.*
in, in, *prep. w. abl.*
inasmuch as, quoniam (§ 407, 1).
increase (*trans.*), augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.
infantry, peditēs, um, *m.*
inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
be informed, certior fīō, fierī, factus sum.
inhabitant, incola, ae, *m.*
injure, noceō, ere, uī, itūrus, *with the dat.* (§ 306, 2).
into, in, *prep. w. acc.*
island, īnsula, ae, *f.*
Italy, Italia, ae, *f.*

javelin, tēlum, ī, *n.*
join (**battle**), committō, ere, mīsī, missus.

keep away, **ward off**, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
kill, interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, īre, īvī, ītus.

lack, **be lacking**, dēsum, dĕesse, dēfuī (§ 252).
land, ager, agrī, *m.*
land (*as opposed to the water*), terra, ae, *f.*
large, magnus, a, um (§ 101).
last, **last part of**, *limiting a noun*, extrēmus, a, um (§ 373).
law, **statute**, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead, **lead out**, **lead away**, dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
lead across, trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leave, relinquō, ere, līquī, lictus.
legion, legiō, ōnis, *f.*
lend (*help*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
less, minus.
lest, nē.
letter (*an epistle*), litterae, ārum, *f.*
liberty, lībertās, ātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m.*
life, vīta, ae, *f.*
like, similis, e.
line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f.*
little (*a little*), paulum.
long (*adj.*), longus, a, um.
long (*adv.*), diū.
love, amō, āre, āvī, ātus.
loyalty, fidēs, eī, *f.*

make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
make (*somebody or something safe, bold, clear, etc.*), reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
man, homō, inis, *m.*, *the general term; man as opposed to woman, or as a complimentary designation*, vir, virī, *m.*
many, multī, ae, a; **very many**, complūrēs, a; *gen.* complūrium.
march (*noun*), iter, itineris, *n.*
march (*verb*), iter facere, *lit.*, *make a march.*
march forth, ēgredior, ī, gressus sum.
messenger, nūntius, ī (iī), *m.*
mile, mille passūs, *lit.*, *thousand paces; pl.*, mīlia passuum.
money, pecūnia, ae, *f.*
more (*adv.*), magis.
more (*substantive*), plūs, plūris, *n.*
most, plērīque, aeque, aque.
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.

much, multus, a, um.
my, meus, a, um.

name, nōmen, inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, a, um.
naval, nāvālis, e.
necessary, it is necessary, necesse est.
need, there is need, opus est (§ 344, 2).
neglect, neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus.
next, proximus, a, um (§ 102, 1; 314).
no, nūllus, a, um.
no one, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *acc.* nēminem ; *gen. and abl. wanting.*
noble, nōbilis, e.
not, nōn, nē.
(not), is not ? does not ? *etc.*, nōnne (§ 288, 2).
not even, nē . . . quidem, *with the emphatic word between.*
not yet, nōndum.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
now (*at the present time*), nunc.
number, numerus, ī, *m.*

of, concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
often, saepe.
on, in, *prep. with abl.*
on all sides, undique, *adv.*
one, ūnus, a, um.
one . . . another, alius . . . alius ; the one . . . the other, alter . . . alter.
onset, impetus, ūs, *m.*
opinion, sententia, ae, *f.*
opportunity, occāsiō, ōnis, *f.*
order, levy, imperō, 1.
order, command, jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussus.
other, another, alius, a, ud.
other, the other, alter, a, um.
others, all the others, cēterī, ae, a.

ought, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus; it behooves, oportet, ēre, oportuit.
our, our own, noster, tra, trum.
overcome, superō, āre, āvī, ātus.

pace (= *5 feet*), passus, ūs, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, ī, *m.*
perish, intereō, īre, iī, itūrus (§ 280).
permit, permittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
persuade, persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum (§ 306, 2).
pity, misericordia, ae, *f.*
pity, it excites pity, miseret, miserēre, miseruit, *impersonal.*
place, locus, ī, *m.*
place in charge, in command over, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *with the dat. of indirect obj.*
plan, cōnsilium, ī, *n.*
plunder, dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus.
Pompey, Pompejus, Pompeī, *m.*
power, potestās, ātis, *f.*; *denotes the power that is vested in an official.*
praise, laudō, 1.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī (§ 269).
present, give, dōnō, 1.
present, be present, adsum, esse, fūi, futūrus (§ 252).
prevail, valeō, ere, valuī, itūrus.
put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus (§ 306, 3).
put to flight, fugō, āre, āvī, ātus.

quickly, celeriter, *adv.*, *from the adj.*, celer, eris, ere.

rampart, agger, eris, *m.*
ravage, vexō, 1.
receive, accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus.
recollection, memoria, ae, *f.*

regret, it causes regret, paenitet, ēre, uit, *impersonal* (§ 287 ; 330).
remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, a, um.
remember, **bear in mind**, meminī, isse (§ 329).
remind, admoneō, ēre, uī, itus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondī, respōnsus.
report (*noun*), fāma, ae, *f.*
report (*verb*), nūntiō, 1.
reputation, fāma, ae, *f.*
request, **seek**, petō, ere, petīvī (iī), ītus.
resist, resistō, ere, restitī, *with dat.* (§ 306, 2).
rest, **the rest**, cēterī, ae, a.
retard, tardō, 1.
return (*intrans.*), revertor, ī ; redeō, īre, iī, itum.
reward, praemium, ī (iī), *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, *m.*
river, flūmen, inis, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, a, um ; **a Roman**, Rōmānus, ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, ae, *f.*

safety, salūs, ūtis, *f.*
sake, **for the sake**, causā, *with gen.* ; *the gen. always precedes.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem (§ 138) ; **at the same time**, simul.
save, servō, 1.
say, dicō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
scarcely, vix.
sea, mare, is, *n.*
see, videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seem, videor, ērī, vīsus sum.
seize, occupō, 1.
self, **oneself**, suī, sibi, sē.
self (*i.e. I myself, you yourself, etc.*), ipse, *in apposition with the subject or object.*
sell, vēndō, ere, vēndidi, vēnditus.
senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, ere, mīsī, missus.
Sequani, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m.*
set out, proficīscor, ī, fectus sum.
she, ea, *f. of* is (§ 137).
ship, nāvis, is, *f.*
(sides) on all, undique.
since (*causal*), cum.
six, sex, *indecl.*
slave, servus, ī, *m.*
small, parvus, a, um (§ 101).
so (*of degree*), tam.
so, **thus** (*of manner*), ita, sīc.
so great, tantus, a, um.
so many, tot, *indecl.*
soldier, mīles, itis, *m.*
some, **something**, aliquis, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
son, fīlius, ī, *m.*
Spain, Hispānia, ae, *f.*
spare, parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus (§ 306, 2).
speak, loquor, ī, locūtus sum ; dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
standard, signum, ī, *n.*
state, cīvitās, ātis, *f.*
station, collocō, 1.
stone, lapis, idis, *m.*
such, tālis, e.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer, patior, ī, passus sum.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.
summer, aestās, ātis, *f.*
summon, vocō, 1.
(superior), **be superior to**, superō, 1.
surpass, superō, 1.
surrender (oneself), dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus.
surround, circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.
suspicion, suspīciō, onis, *f.*
sword, gladius, ī (iī), *m.*

take, seize, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.
take by storm, expugnō, 1.
talent, talentum, ī, *n.*
tarry, moror, ārī, ātus sum.
teach, doceō, ēre, uī, doctus.
tell, say, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
ten, decem, *indecl.*
terrify, perterreō, ēre, uī, territus.
than, quam, *conj.; see also* § 339.
that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.
that of yours, iste, ista, istud.
that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
that, in order that, ut; quī quae, quod *w. the subj.; w. comp.*, quō.
that, on the ground that, quod.
that, lest, *with verbs of fearing*, nē.
that not, in order that not, nē.
that not, *with verbs of fearing*, ut.
that (*of result*), ut.
that not, ut nōn.
their, their own, suus, a, um.
they, *see he, she, etc.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
those, *as antecedent of rel.*, eī, eae, ea.
thou, tū, tuī.
though, quamquam, quamvīs, etsī, cum.
thousand, mīlle; *pl.*; mīlia, ium, *n.*
three, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, ae, a.
till, dum, dōnec, *conj.*
time, tempus, oris, *n.*
to, ad, *prep. w. acc.*
(top) top of, *with a noun*, summus, a, um (§ 373).
torture, supplicium, ī (iī), *n.*
touch, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
tower, turris, is, *f.*
town, oppidum, ī, *n.*
tree, arbor, oris, *f.*
trench, fossa, ae, *f.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, ī, *m.*
troops, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
trust, cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, *semi-dep.* (§ 306, 2).
try, make trial, temptō, āre, āvī, ātus.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.

under, sub., *prep. w. acc.*
unharmed, incolumis, e.
until, dum, dōnec, quoad.
unwilling, invītus, a, um; be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
us, nōs, nostrum, nostrī, *pl. of* ego. *Cf.* § 377, 2.
use, ūtor, ī, ūsus sum.

valor, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
Veneti, Venetī, ōrum, *m.*
very many, complūrēs, a; *gen.* complūrium.
victory, victōria, ae, *f.*
village, vīcus, ī, *m.*
virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
wait, wait for, exspectō, 1.
war, bellum, ī, *n.*
watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*
welcome, grātus, a, um.
what? quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).
whatever, quisquis, quidquid.
when? quandō.
when, *rel.*, ubi, ut, cum.
where? ubi.
where, *rel.*, ubi.
whether, num, -ne.
whither, quō.
while, *conj.*, dum (§ 418).
who? quis.

who, which, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
whole, tōtus, a, um (§ 83).
winter quarters, hīberna, ōrum, *n.*
wish, volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum, *prep. w. abl.*
withdraw, discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.
without, sine, *prep. w. abl.*
withstand, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
word, verbum, ī, *n.*
work (*a work*), opus, eris, *n.*
worthy, dignus, a, um.
wound (*noun*), vulnus, eris, *n.*
wound (*verb*), vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus.
write, scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.

year, annus, ī, *m.*
(**yet**), **not yet,** nōndum.
you, tū, tuī:
young man, adulēscēns, entis, *m.*
your, your own, tuus, a, um ; vester, tra, trum.

A Latin Grammar

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 290 pages. Price, 80 cents.

IN this book the essential facts of Latin grammar are presented within the smallest compass consistent with scholarly standards. Not only the work of the preparatory school is covered, but also that of the required courses in college and university. By confining himself to the best usage the author has found it possible to treat the subject with entire adequacy in the compass of 250 pages, exclusive of indexes. In the German schools books of this scope are found to meet fully the exacting demands of the entire gymnasial course, which is much more extended than that of American academies, and in both the French lycées and the English schools the popular Latin grammars are of the size of Bennett and tend to grow smaller rather than larger. Besides its compact size, the grammar has the merit of clear and simple statement illustrated by brief and intelligible examples.

Pupils find it easier to master Latin with the help of a book which is lucid in statement, and which omits the mass of unnecessary detail which made the older grammars so confusing. The fact that the pupil himself sees that Bennett's Grammar can be mastered as a whole, lends a directness and focus to the study which is impossible of attainment with a bulky book.

That schools demand a simple and concise grammar receives ample proof in the wide success of Professor Bennett's work. To-day it is used by more of the Latin pupils in the United States than any other.

In a word, the appeal of Bennett's Latin Grammar is universal. The schoolboy likes it because it makes easy the finding of the rules, which are put in language that he can understand. The teacher welcomes it because it gives him just the body of syntax on which he knows the pupil should be drilled. The college professor is glad to have a book which contains the grammar that he may justly *require* his students to know, and beyond which they enter the realm of the specialist.

The Latin Language: A Historical Outline of its Sounds, Inflections, and Syntax

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 272 pages. Price, $1.00.

THIS is a text-book in advanced Latin Grammar for colleges and universities. It is a complete revision of the Appendix to Bennett's Latin Grammar, a book which was first prepared in 1896, from a series of lectures to advanced students on subjects not covered by any Latin Grammar published in America. The title, Appendix, was found to be misleading, and the author has given to the revision the new name of The Latin Language. The book gives such information regarding the history and development of the language as experience has shown to be of service to students who are specializing in Latin.

The subjects treated are: —

The Latin Alphabet	Accent	Inflections
Pronunciation	Orthography	Adverbs and Prepositions
Hidden Quantity	The Latin Sounds	Syntax

Of these subjects, those of Hidden Quantity, Inflections, and Syntax receive special attention.

The author has been most successful in gathering under one cover, and in convenient form, the most interesting results of recent classical investigation at home and abroad. These he has set forth fully and clearly, but in compact form.

The Quantitative Reading of Latin Poetry

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT. 12mo, paper, 49 pages. Price, 25 cents.

BELIEVING that with the aid of a few simple precepts, faithfully carried out, the oral reading of Latin Poetry may be made easy and enjoyable, Professor Bennett has prepared this little monograph emphasizing the importance of the knowledge of quantities as well as of rhythm. It will be of service not only to pupils but also to many teachers of Latin.

Preparatory Latin Writer

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 16mo, cloth, 202 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THE Latin Writer has been prepared with the conviction that the primary function of Latin Composition in high schools is to extend and strengthen the pupil's knowledge of Latin Grammar. The principles of syntax are arranged in the systematic order of the grammars and are illustrated by disconnected sentences.

Each lesson contains first grammatical principles, with references to the standard grammars. These are followed by simple illustrative sentences, a vocabulary, and then by well graded sentences to be put into Latin. No effort has been spared to make the sentences as attractive as possible.

The book combines the writing of continuous discourse with the systematic study of the principles. There are forty exercises in connected composition.

Other features are frequent foot-notes, remarks, and suggestions, which illuminate the exercises.

The words are all taken from Cæsar; but it is not expected that the use of the book will be confined to classes in Cæsar. Sufficient material is provided for all the Latin composition ordinarily given in a high school course.

Latin Composition

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 16mo, cloth, 172 pages. Price, 80 cents.

IN scope and plan the Composition is the same as the Latin Writer; the grammatical principles illustrated are identical; and the book can be used in alternate years with the other. The difference is that the words in the Latin Composition are taken mainly from Cicero, while those in the Latin Writer are from Cæsar.

Like the Latin Writer the Latin Composition contains as much material as is ordinarily given in a high school course.

Cæsar's Gallic War

Books I–IV. Indicated quantities, Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Illustrations, and colored Maps and Plans. Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 355 pages. Price, $1.00.

THE special feature of Bennett's Cæsar is the notes, which are fuller than in other editions, and which make it their province not only to clear up difficulties but to give a running commentary on the narrative, and thus to keep the setting of the campaigns constantly before the pupil. The occurrence of each proper name is made the text for interesting comment; at intervals the situation is summarized for the pupil; every effort is made that the narrative shall seem vivid and attractive. The drill on syntax by means of grammatical references is very thorough.

Professor Bennett is particularly happy in choosing for comment exactly those passages which are stumbling blocks to young pupils.

The introduction has a sketch of Cæsar's life and an illustrated description of the art of war in his time.

The text is broken by brief headings in English which show the trend of the narrative.

Long vowels are marked throughout.

There are ten colored maps and plans, illustrating every campaign.

In the vocabulary the basal meaning of the word is given first.

The price is more reasonable than that of most editions of Cæsar.

Classroom Texts

PAMPHLETS, containing the text only, have been prepared to accompany the following books: Bennett's Cæsar, Cicero, Virgil; Kelsey's Cæsar, Cicero, Ovid; Comstock's Virgil; Rolfe's Viri Romæ, Nepos, and Junior Latin Book. They will be furnished free when ordered in connection with these books.

Cicero's Orations

Indicated quantities, full Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Illustrations, and two colored Maps. Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 379 pages. Price, $1.00.

THIS edition contains seven orations — the four against Catiline, the Manilian Law, Archias, and Marcellus.

As in the Cæsar, the notes are the special feature of the book. They give fully the setting of each oration and contain a commentary on all allusions to the history of the times. This has been found much more practical than referring constantly to a historical outline in the Introduction. The notes also keep the pupil in touch with the logic of the argument and give an adequate explanation of all points of Roman law and custom. Aided by them, students cannot fail to see the speeches as masterpieces of the art of oratory.

The Introduction has an outline of Cicero's life, and sections on Cicero as a Man of Letters, Cicero's Character, Roman Public Antiquities, and the Roman Forum.

There are eighteen illustrations, including portraits of the prominent men of the time. There is also a plan and a reproduction of the Forum as it appeared in Cicero's time (found only in this edition), and pictures of the Forum of to-day.

There are colored maps of Italy and Asia Minor.

The long vowels are marked throughout the text.

The text is broken by brief headings in English, showing the progress of the argument.

The price is very low, when the general excellence of the edition is considered.

One Hundred and Twenty Epigrams of Martial

Edited by Professor JOHN H. WESTCOTT, of Princeton University. 16mo, paper, 81 pages. Price, 30 cents.

THIS selection is intended for rapid reading, or even for sight-reading with students of sufficient ability. The notes have been placed on the pages with the text.

Virgil's Æneid: Books I–VI

Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT. With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. 12mo, cloth, 491 pages. Price, $1.20.

AS in Bennett's Cæsar and Cicero the important feature of the Virgil is the elaborate notes. At short intervals headings describe the incidents which are to follow. Every allusion to mythology is fully explained, and the progress of the story is kept before the pupil. Professor Bennett has the gift of selecting for comment the passages which are likely to be difficult to the student, and of giving just the right amount of explanation.

The Introduction treats of Virgil's life and works, and gives a full explanation of the quantitative reading of Latin poetry, together with classified verses for practice.

The long vowels are marked throughout Book I.

There are sixteen illustrations, handsomely reproduced from ancient statuary, and two maps — the Wanderings of Æneas and the Lake of Avernus.

Selections from Viri Romæ

With Notes, Exercises, Maps, and a Vocabulary, by Professor JOHN C. ROLFE, University of Pennsylvania. 16mo, cloth, 312 pages. Price, 75 cents.

THIS book will appeal to teachers who wish to insert easy reading between the beginning book and Cæsar. The advantage in its use lies in the fact that it is full of variety and interest, and that, in an attractive form, it gives the pupil a sketch of Roman history from Romulus to Augustus, together with many allusions to the customs of Roman life.

Full notes have been prepared for twenty of the twenty-five selections contained in the book; while the other five are arranged for sight reading, with hints for translation at the bottom of the page.

In the text, the quantity of the long vowels is marked. Exercises for translation of English into Latin, based on the text, are given.

Selections from Ovid

With an Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary by Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY. Illustrated. 12mo, half leather, 453 pages. Price, $1.25.

THIS edition contains about 3000 lines. In Part I are twenty-five pages of selections from the Amores, Ars Amatoria, Fasti, Tristia, Ibis, and Epistulæ ex Ponto. Part II has eighty pages of selections from the Metamorphoses, including many of the familiar myths. All the excerpts are such as can be read in mixed classes.

The Introduction treats of Ovid and his works, and contains a complete outline of Greek and Roman mythology.

Following the notes are lists of books of reference which are a help to the study of Ovid, and a table of the English pronunciation of Latin proper names.

There are ten full-page illustrations, handsomely reproduced from classic statuary.

The notes have been made especially full, for the assistance of pupils who begin the reading of Latin poetry with Ovid.

The Lives of Cornelius Nepos

With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary by Professor JOHN C. ROLFE, University of Pennsylvania. 12mo, cloth, 387 pages. Price $1.10.

THIS edition contains the twenty-three Lives from the *Liber de Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium* and the Lives of Cato and Atticus from *Liber de Latinis Historicis.*

The book has three double-page maps showing all the places mentioned in the text.

At the back of the book are exercises for Latin Composition based on the text.

The long quantities are marked throughout.

Selected Fables of Phædrus

With Indicated Quantities. Edited for reading at sight by Professor JOSEPH H. DRAKE, University of Michigan. 16mo, paper, 68 pages. Price, 30 cents.

A Junior Latin Book

With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary, by Professors JOHN C. ROLFE, of the University of Pennsylvania, and WALTER DENNISON, of the University of Michigan. 12mo, half leather, 498 pages. Price, $1.25.

THIS book will appeal to teachers who believe in reading a book of selections in the second year instead of the ordinary course in Cæsar. The Junior Latin Book has these advantages over other books of selections: —

(1) All the material preceding the lives of Nepos forms a connected historical story from the earliest Roman times to the time of Cæsar.

(2) Except for the few fables only four different styles are presented, so that there is an economy of vocabulary, and of effort to master strange fashions of writing.

(3) The Cæsar presented is continuous and is that which is most familiar to literature.

The Contents are: —

Three Pages of Fables.

Selections based on Eutropius, covering Roman History to the time of Cicero.

Viri Romæ — The Lives of Cæsar, Cicero, and Augustus.

Nepos — The Lives of Miltiades, Themistocles, Pausanias, Epaminondas, Hamilcar, Hannibal, and Cato.

Cæsar's Gallic War, Books I and II.

The book contains exercises in Latin Composition based on the text and maps of Ancient Italy, Rome and Environs, Greece and the Ægean Sea, Asia Minor, Gaul, and the Roman Empire.

Outline of Greek and Roman Mythology

B" Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY. 12mo, paper, 40 pages. Price, 's.

a brief but systematic outline of Greek and Roman logy, with a list of reference books. It is useful either students of classical literature, or as a starting-point of classic mythology.

A Supplementary Latin Composition

By Professor H. C. NUTTING, of the University of California. Revised and enlarged edition. 12mo, cloth, 140 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THIS book is intended as a review of Latin Composition for the upper years of the secondary school.

Part I consists of a summary of the ninety-two commonest Latin constructions, followed by six groups of sentences, each group illustrating all of these constructions.

Part II (the distinctive feature of the revision) contains forty exercises in connected discourse, so arranged as to give a coherent account of the life of Catiline. Both parts are designed to provide helpful preparation for the composition work offered in colleges and universities in the freshman year.

Advanced Latin Composition

By Professor H. C. NUTTING, of the University of California. 12mo, cloth, 167 pages. Price, $1.00.

THIS book is divided into three Parts, each of which provides material for a one-hour course throughout the year. The exercises are based upon passages of Cæsar and Cicero, unfamiliar to students in the early part of their college course.

Parts I and II are designed specially for freshman work. They both cover practically the same ground, thus making it possible to use the book in two successive years without givir the same exercise twice. In preparing the passages for trar tion into Latin two ends have been kept in view: first, t the knowledge of forms and syntax at the places where ence has shown the freshman student to be weak; and to illustrate a few of the fine points which cannot be treated in the preparatory school.

Part III provides suitable work for students w pleted either Part I or Part II. In it the exerc and more difficult, and the notes afford the studer